ILLUSTRATED CLASSICS

ESAR BOOK I

A.C. LIDDELL M.A.

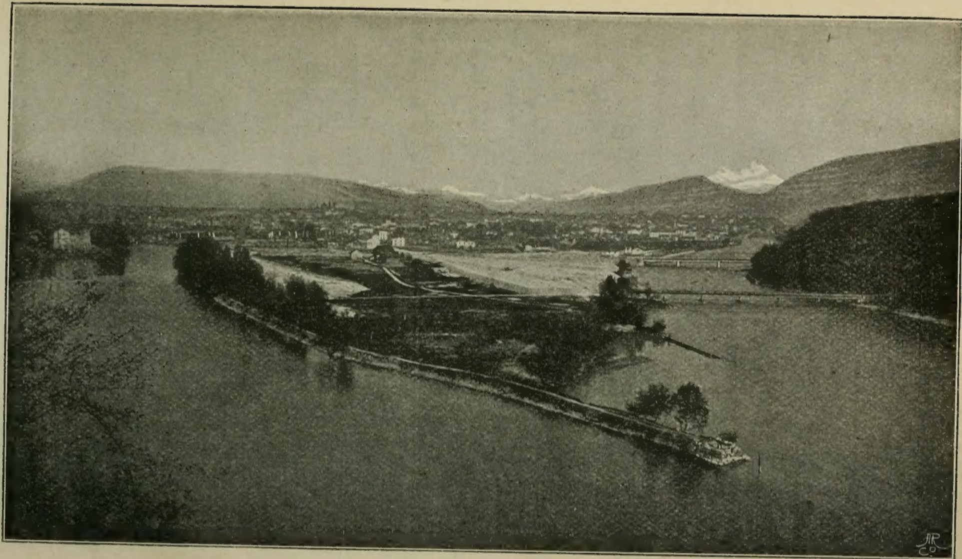
Bell's Illustrated Classical Series

Edited by E. C. Marchant, M.A.

Late Classical Master at St. Paul's School

CAESAR: DE BELLO GALLICO

BOOK I



Geneva, showing the Junction of the Rhone and the Aar. (From a photograph)

C. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER PRIMUS

EDITED BY

A. C. LIDDELL, M.A.

FORMERLY SCHOLAR OF JESUS COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE
ASSISTANT MASTER IN THE NOTTINGHAM HIGH SCHOOL

LONDON: GEORGE BELL & SONS
YORK STREET, COVENT GARDEN
1900

OXFORD: HORACE HART
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

PREFACE

In preparing the Introduction and Notes to this Book I have constantly had by me Kraner's edition (1898). For the life of Caesar I have referred to Mr. Froude's *Caesar* and to Dr. Smith's *Dictionary*. It is hoped that the exercises for re-translation will be useful for viva voce work in class and will in some cases at least give hints for translation into idiomatic English. There is really no reason why even the youngest boy should be allowed to suppose that such a sentence as 'which things when he had heard, Caesar, the camp having been fortified,' &c., bears any resemblance to his mother-tongue.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Preface	v
Introduction:	
I. Life of Caesar	1
II. Provincial Government	4
III. Wars in Gaul	6
IV. The Roman Army	7
Text	31
Notes	95
Exercises	130
Grammatical Appendix	139
Index of Proper Names	i
Vocabulary	vii

CORRECTION

The title to the illustration on p. 49 *should be*

A Cavalry Action. (From Trajan's Column.)

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

PAGE

GENEVA, SHOWING THE JUNCTION OF THE RHONE AND THE AAR . . . . *Frontispiece*

CENTURION. (From a grave-relief in the Museum at Bonn) 12

TRIBUNUS MILITUM. (From Trajan's Column) . . 12

ROMAN ARMS AND ARMOUR. (From Trajan's Column and other sources) 14

THE SOLDIER'S PACK. (From Trajan's Column) . . 16

STANDARD-BEARER. (From Trajan's Column) . . 19

PLAN OF A ROMAN CAMP 20

RAMPART AND DITCH OF A CAMP 21

BATTERING-RAM AND VINEAE. (From the Triumphal Arch of Septimius Severus) 25

TESTUDO. (From the Column of Antoninus) . . 27

BALLISTA. (From various sources) 28

PASSING UNDER THE YOKE. (From descriptions) . 37

MAKING A BRIDGE OF RAFTS AND BOATS. (The boats from Trajan's Column, the raft from a mosaic, the punt from a wall-painting) 42

ROMAN CAVALRY SOLDIER. (From Trajan's Column) . 48

BATTLE BETWEEN ROMANS AND GAULS. (From a sarcophagus in the Capitoline Museum, Rome) . 49

PAGE

Gallic Ensigns, War-horns, and Sword. (From bas-reliefs on the Triumphal Arch at Orange; the Sword from Pergamon) 53

Gallic Method of Advancing in Phalanx. (From descriptions) 55

Roman Pila. (From the Museum at St. Germain and from a gravestone found at Bonn) 57

Gallic Shields and Spears. (From bas-reliefs on the Triumphal Arch at Orange, and from Pergamon) 58

Suing Peace from the Romans. (From Trajan's Column) 60

Besançon (Vesontio). (From a drawing in Allen and Greenough's *Caesar*) 72

Gallic Horse-soldiers. (From a monument in the Museum at Aix) 78

Fortifying the Camp. (From Trajan's Column) . 87

Carts and Waggons. (From the Column of Marcus Aurelius and Etruscan reliefs) 89

German Shields. (From a Trophy on a Coin and Trajan's Column) 90

Boats at a Riverside Wharf. (From Trajan's Column) 92

Army Quarters on the Banks of a River, with Bridge of Boats. (From Trajan's Column) . 93

MAPS AND PLANS

Gaul in the Time of Caesar . . . . *To face p.* 1

Campaign of 58 B.C. 30

Helvetiorum Clades. (From Van Kampen) . . 56

Ariovisti Clades. (From Van Kampen) . . . 85



The Edinburgh Geographical Institute

LONDON: GEORGE BELL & SONS.

John Bartholomew & Co.

INTRODUCTION

I. Life of Caesar.

Gaius Julius Caesar was born on July 12, B.C. 102 or 100. In B.C. 83 he married Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, one of the chief opponents of the dictator Sulla. He served his first campaign in B.C. 81, and at the siege of Mytilene in the next year won the *corona civica* (what we should call nowadays the Victoria Cross) for saving the life of a fellow citizen. In B.C. 76, while on his way to Rhodes to study rhetoric, he was captured off Miletus by pirates, who made him pay a ransom of fifty talents (about £12,000): his first act on becoming free was to collect ships and seize his captors, who were convicted at Pergamus and crucified. After seeing some service in the second Mithridatic War, B.C. 74, he returned to Rome the same year. In B.C. 68 he was quaestor in Spain; in B.C. 65 curule aedile, and won great popularity by the lavish way in which he spent his money (or rather money borrowed for the purpose) on the public games and buildings. In B.C. 62 he was praetor, and the year after he did good service as propraetor in Spain, in subduing the rebellious tribes and reorganizing the administration of the province. In B.C. 60 the first triumvirate, between Caesar, Pompey and Crassus, was

formed, by which Caesar secured the consulship for the year B.C. 59, and the governorship of the two Gauls and Illyricum for five years. The next eight years, till B.C. 50, he spent first in subduing, and then in organizing Gaul, his five years being prolonged by a special arrangement between the triumvirs at the conference of Lucca, B.C. 56. As Caesar's government of Gaul was to expire in B.C. 49, he resolved to obtain the consulship for B.C. 48; for otherwise he would become a private citizen, and be liable to prosecution—the very thing desired by his opponents the senatorial party, and by Pompey, who had for various reasons become Caesar's jealous rival. At the beginning of B.C. 49 the senate called upon Caesar to disband his army on pain of being regarded as an enemy to the state. This he refused to do unless Pompey would do the same; and thereupon the Civil War broke out, and ended in the utter overthrow of Pompey at Pharsalus in B.C. 48. From this time Caesar was emperor of Rome in all but name, until his assassination on the Ides (15th) of March, B.C. 44.

Caesar as soldier. It is as a soldier first of all that we think of Caesar. Though he only became a soldier by accident, yet there are few, if any, commanders who have shown greater military genius. Other great generals (Alexander the Great, for instance, Hannibal, Bonaparte) have distinguished themselves at a much earlier age than Caesar, but the remarkable thing about him is that until he was forty he had seen practically nothing of warfare, and yet he appears all at once as one of the world's greatest soldiers. With regard to the Gallic Wars one is perhaps tempted to think that there he had only a horde of semi-savage barbarians to contend against; but we must remember that the conquest of Gaul was effected by quite a small force, which was

worked with the precision of a machine. 'Men whose nominal duty was merely to fight were engineers, architects, mechanics of the highest order. In a few hours they could extemporize an impregnable fortress on an open hill side: they bridged the Rhine in a week and built a fleet in a month. This perfect machine was composed of human beings, who required supplies of tools and arms, and clothes and food and shelter, and for all these it depended on the forethought of its commander. Countries entirely unknown had to be surveyed; routes had to be laid out; the depths and courses of rivers, the character of mountain passes, had all to be ascertained. Yet Caesar was only once defeated when personally present. He was rash, but with a calculated rashness which the event never failed to justify. . . . Yet he was singularly careful of his soldiers; he never exposed them to unnecessary danger, and the Roman loss in the campaigns in Gaul was astonishingly slight. In discipline he was lenient to ordinary faults: mutiny and desertion only he never overlooked. And thus no general was ever loved more by, or had greater power over, the army which served under him. When the civil war began and Labienus left him, he told all his officers who had served under Pompey that they were free to follow if they wished. Not another man forsook him[1].'

Caesar as writer. Caesar was the author of many works, but the only ones which have come down to us are his seven books of *Commentarii* (literally 'note-books' or 'journals'), relating the history of the wars in Gaul (the eighth was added by another hand), and three books containing an account of the early part of the Civil War. Probably they were originally in the form of notes jotted down in a diary in the course of his

[1] Mr. Froude's *Caesar*.

campaigns, and worked up into their present form while he was in winter quarters. 'In his compositions, as in his actions, Caesar is entirely simple. He indulges in no images, no laboured descriptions, no conventional reflexions. The actual fact of things stands out as it really was, interpreted by the calmest intelligence, and described with unexaggerated feeling. No military narrative has approached the history of the war in Gaul. Nothing is written down which could be dispensed with; nothing is left untold. . . . . About himself and his own exploits there is not one word of self-complacency or self-admiration. In his writings, as in his life, Caesar is always the same—direct and straightforward. . . . The *Commentaries*, as an historical narrative, are as far superior to any other Latin composition of the kind as the person of Caesar himself stands out among his contemporaries [1].'

II. Provincial Government.

By the word 'province' is meant a sphere of duty, especially that assigned to a consul or praetor, within which he exercised his *imperium*. The Senate decided which provinces were to be consular, which praetorian [2]; and when the consuls and praetors had completed their year of office at Rome, they proceeded as proconsuls and propraetors to their province, and stayed there for a year, unless, as frequently happened, it was found necessary to prolong (*prorogare*) their *imperium*. The supply of

[1] Mr. Froude's *Caesar*.

[2] Provinces where an army was necessary were usually assigned to a proconsul, those which were quiet to a propraetor.

money, troops, ships, and subordinates, was settled by the Senate. Besides commanding the troops and having the right to make levies (*delectus*) for military service, the governor had also jurisdiction in criminal and civil cases. The provincials had no means of protecting themselves against oppression and ill-treatment till the governor's term of office came to an end, after which they could lodge a complaint before the Senate. Each governor took with him a *quaestor*, as financial secretary, a certain number of *legati* to assist him in his duties, a circle of personal friends, and a large staff of clerks.

Caesar's province. It has already been said that Caesar had assigned to him, as his province or provinces, Illyricum and the two Gauls, Cisalpine and Transalpine. (1) Illyricum, the strip of country on the east of the Adriatic, including Istria and Dalmatia, had been made a province in B.C. 167, and since that time there had been several wars there. That it was even now looked upon as likely to be troublesome is shown by the fact that three out of Caesar's four legions were sent to the colony of Aquileia; but during his government he only visited it for the purpose of holding the yearly assizes (*conventūs*). (2) By Cisalpine Gaul was meant the northern part of Italy, lying between the river Rubicon and the Alps. It was divided into nearly equal halves by the river Padus, and these halves were sometimes called Gallia Transpadana and Gallia Cispadana; the people of the latter, since the Social War in B.C. 89, had possessed the full rights of Roman citizenship, those of the former partial rights. The whole district had become so Romanized, and was so filled with Roman citizens, that though it still remained a province it became known as *Gallia Togata*, as distinguished from Gaul beyond the Alps. (3) The Transalpine Gaul of

Caesar was the country included between the Rhone and the Lake of Geneva on the north, the Alps on the east, the Cevennes and the Garonne on the west, and the Mediterranean and the Pyrenees on the south. It had been made a province in B.C. 118, and was known specially as 'the Province' (*Provincia*), whence the modern name Provence. In this the Greek colony of Massilia (Marseilles) had long been a centre of civilization and commerce, and by the time of Caesar's governorship the Province was almost completely Romanized.

III. Wars in Gaul.

In B.C. 125, or thereabouts, a struggle for the supremacy of Celtic Gaul broke out between the Aedui and their neighbours and rivals, the Arverni. The Aedui appealed to Rome for help, and the Arverni were defeated first by Fabius Maximus, and again by Cn. Domitius (B.C. 121)[1]. The result of these wars was the creation of the province of Gallia Transalpina in B.C. 118. But in the year B.C. 113 a horde of German barbarians, the Cimbri, suddenly appeared, and after subduing some of the Celtic cantons began to threaten the Roman province. In B.C. 105 they won a great victory over the Romans at Arausio on the Rhone, and a year or two later were joined by their kinsmen, the Teutons. Marius, however, at Aquae Sextiae (Aix), in B.C. 102, and Q. Catulus at Vercellae, B.C. 101, put an end to this invasion, which created the wildest alarm at Rome. Thirty years later the Sequăni in central Gaul, who were at the head of the anti-Roman party, made an attempt to destroy Roman influence, and to humble the Aedui. The Sequăni

[1] This is noticeable as the first occasion on which Rome interfered in the politics of Gaul proper.

got the support of the German prince Ariovistus, who crossed the Rhine with 15,000 men, and after a long war the Aedui had to submit to become tributary to the Sequăni. The Aedui had sent to Rome for help, but none had been given, and Ariovistus even managed to get himself recognized by the Senate as a 'friend and ally.' The result of the Romans' supineness was that Ariovistus set about extending his power over the whole of Gaul. His success roused other German tribes, and from the source of the Rhine to the Atlantic ocean the whole line of the Rhine was threatened by them. Lastly, the Helvetii, who occupied the district between Basle and Geneva, formed the resolution of evacuating their territory, partly in the hope of finding a better settlement, partly to escape from the constant pressure of the Germans to the east of them. If their scheme were carried out their land would, of course, fall to the Germans, and there seemed every prospect of another German invasion of Italy, like that of the Cimbri and Teutons at the end of the second century, B.C. It was at this moment that Caesar entered on his province. His army consisted of four veteran legions (the seventh, eighth, ninth, and tenth), and he had the right to fill up his legions, or form new ones, from the population of his provinces. Indeed, his first step, on hearing that the Helvetii were in movement, was to raise two new legions. 'He had no definite instructions; to one who was discerning and courageous these were implied in the circumstances with which he had to deal.' The details of the two campaigns of B.C. 58 are given in Book I.

IV. The Roman Army.

The legion. From the reign of Servius Tullius (B.C. 578–534) every Roman citizen who possessed a certain

amount of property was required to serve in the army and provide his own equipment; only the very poorest were excused from service. The richest men served as cavalry, those who were not rich enough to be horsemen as infantry. In the time of Camillus (B.C. 406) pay (*stipendium*) was given to all soldiers, and a new cavalry instituted not chosen by wealth. Marius (B.C. 102) abolished property qualifications altogether and enlisted any citizen who was willing to serve, and after the citizenship was given to all Italians in B.C. 89 there were so many poor men ready to become soldiers that the upper and middle classes were no longer called upon, though they remained liable for service. Of the formation of the army in early times not much is known, but from the time of Camillus the legion was drawn up in three lines: the first of 1,200 young men, called *hastati*; the second of 1,200 men in the prime of life, *principes*; the third of 600 veterans, *triarii*. Besides these there were 1,200 *vēlĭtes*, light-armed skirmishers. The first three classes were all armed alike with helmet, sword, greaves, cuirass and lance, and each line consisted of ten maniples, and each maniple of two centuries commanded by two centurions. Of the 1,200 *vēlĭtes*, twenty were allotted to each century. Hence a legion would consist of—

Hastati[1]:

10 maniples of 120 men = 20 centuries of 60 men = 1200

Principes:

10 maniples of 120 men = 20 centuries of 60 men = 1200

[1] These names are derived from an earlier formation, for the *hastati* were not armed with a *hasta*, as their name implies; nor did the *principes* fight in the front line.

Triarii:	
10 maniples of 60 men = 20 centuries of 30 men =	600
Vēlĭtes: at 20 to each century	= 1200
	4200

To each legion also was attached 300 cavalry, divided into ten squadrons (*turmae*) of thirty men each, each *turma* under three decurions and three under-officers (*optiones*).

Besides this levy of citizens, the Italian allies provided a contingent of at least an equal number of infantry and three times as many cavalry. The allied infantry fought on the wings and was divided into twenty cohorts.

The reforms of Marius (B.C. 106–102). Finding that an adequate army could no longer be raised according to the old system, Marius, as has been said, abolished the property qualification, and the army now became an army of mercenary soldiers armed and paid by the state. From this time all the soldiers of the legion were armed alike, while the *vēlĭtes* were done away with, their place being taken by light-armed auxiliary troops. A further change made by Marius was the arrangement by cohorts instead of by maniples. The legion was now divided into ten cohorts, in each of which were three maniples of *hastati*, *principes* and *triarii*, and each maniple contained two centuries. The names *hastati*, &c., after this merely had reference to the relative rank of the centurions, the officers in command of a century (*centuria*, or more commonly *ordo*).

Number of men in a legion. Nominally the number of men in a legion in Caesar's time was 6,000, but Caesar's would rarely contain more than 3,500 or 3,600; still, whatever the strength of the legion, the number of

cohorts was always ten, so that each cohort would consist of, on the average, 360 men, each maniple of 120.

Names of the legions. The legions were numbered according to the order of their enrolment, *prima*, *secunda*, and so on, and they also had special names, given them from various causes; sometimes from the place of levy, as v. Urbana; or from the place where a victory had been gained, as iv. Scythica; or from some distinguishing quality, as vi. Victrix, xxi. Rapax. The cohorts were numbered 1, 2, 3 . . . 10, the first consisting of the most experienced and efficient men.

The auxiliary troops (auxilia). Besides the heavy-armed legionary soldiers, there were light-armed auxiliary troops attached to the army, which were either furnished by allied states or raised in the provinces. They served on foot, and their numbers varied according to circumstances, but in an ordinary way they would be at least as numerous as the legionaries. They included javelin-throwers (*iaculatores*), slingers (*funditores*) and archers (*sagittarii*), and from the fact that they were usually stationed on the wings (*alae*), they were sometimes called *ālāres* or *alarii*.

The cavalry (equites). Each legion had attached to it a body of 300 cavalry (in Caesar's army about 400), composed of foreigners, chiefly Gauls, Spaniards and Numidians. The cavalry was divided into wings or squadrons (*alae*); each *ala* subdivided into troops (*turmae*), and each *turma* into three *decuriae*, commanded by decurions (*decuriones*). Caesar employed them mainly for skirmishing and scouting purposes, or for the pursuit of a defeated enemy. Their armour consisted of an iron coat of mail, a helmet, greaves, a shield, a lance and a long sword.

The engineer-corps. The engineers (*fabri*) were

under the command of an officer called *praefectus fabrum*; their duties were to mend armour, keep the siege material in order, build bridges and superintend mining operations.

Accompanying the army were *cālōnes*, camp-followers, slaves who acted as the soldiers' servants; *lixae*, sutlers, who followed the legions for trading purposes and sold provisions; and *mercātōres*, traders who bought the booty from the soldiers. Traders of all descriptions had booths for their goods outside the camp.

The officers of the army. 1. *The general.* The whole army was commanded by a general having *imperium*, full military power; that is, by a consul, praetor, proconsul or propraetor. He wore the *palūdamentum*, a robe of scarlet wool, embroidered with gold; he was called the *dux belli*, but after a victory he was greeted by his soldiers as *imperator*.

2. The *legati* were the lieutenants or adjutants of the general. The usual number was three, but that might be increased at the instance of the general; for example, Caesar had ten in Gaul. They held their appointment from the Senate, but in the campaign were of course answerable to the general, who took credit for their successes, but was at the same time responsible for their mistakes. In battle they commanded divisions of the army, and might hold independent commands at times (e. g. Labienus, cc. x, xxi).

3. The *quaestors* were the paymasters of the forces, and had charge of the military chest; they had to look after the feeding and paying of the soldiers, the disposal of the booty and of the prisoners to the slave-dealers who followed the army. On occasion they were entrusted by the general with a separate command (c. lii).

4. The *trĭbūni mīlitum* or *mīlitares*. Each legion had six tribunes, each of whom held command for two months.

They were chosen partly by the people, partly by the general; Caesar's, however, were all appointed by himself. They were mostly young men of equestrian rank, and their appointment depended rather upon family and personal influence with the general than upon military qualifications. As one might naturally expect, Caesar



Centurion. (From a grave-relief in the Museum at Bonn.)



Tribunus Militum. (From Trajan's Column.)

never seems to have allowed them to conduct any important operations where they had the chance of getting into mischief (c. xxxix).

5. The *praefecti* were also of equestrian rank and were appointed by the general. To them were entrusted commands over the allies and auxiliary troops, and various other duties (cc. xviii, at end, xxxix).

6. The *centurions* occupied a place between that of the commissioned and the non-commissioned officer in a modern army. They were chosen, by the general, from the ranks for their experience and skill; but were rarely promoted to higher posts, except from one cohort to another. They were sixty in number, two to each maniple, the senior (*centurio prior*) commanding the first division, the junior (*posterior*) the second division. After the division of the legion into *hastati*, *principes* and *triarii* disappeared, the names were still retained to signify the rank of the centurions; thus the lowest centurion was *decimus hastatus posterior*, i.e. the junior centurion of the tenth cohort; the senior centurion of the whole legion was called in full *primi pili centurio*, (*prior* being omitted and the word *pilus* substituted for *triarii*), but this was usually shortened into *primus pīlus* or *primipīlus*. The centurions carried as a mark of authority a vine-wand (*vitis*, whence the phrase *vite donari*, to be chosen centurion) and a badge on their helmet, and they took part in the council of war. Caesar often makes honourable mention of the bravery of the centurions.

The arms of the legionary soldiers. 1. The defensive armour consisted of helmet, breastplate, greaves and shield.

The helmet of the infantry (*gălea*) was usually of leather strengthened with brass; that of the cavalry (*cassis*) of iron. On the march the helmet was carried hanging in front of the breast.

The breastplate (*lōrīca*) was a leather coat, strengthened with bands of metal.

The greaves (*ocreae*) were metal leg-guards reaching up to the knee; usually only one was worn, on the right leg, because the left leg was protected by the shield.



ROMAN ARMS AND ARMOUR.

A. Iron helmet, found at Niederbiber.
B. Crested helmet from a bas-relief.
C, D. Shield and cuirass from Trajan's Column, the sword and dagger from a grave-relief.
E. Spears. F. Bronze spur.
G. Sandal, from Trajan's Column.

Probably, however, *ocreae* were out of fashion in Caesar's time, and no longer worn.

The shield (*scūtum*) was of wood covered with leather and with metal rims. In the middle was an iron knob or stud (*umbo*). The shield was decorated in various ways, and had therefore to protect it a cover which was removed before battle.

2. The offensive arms were the sword and the javelin. The sword (*glădius*) was about two feet long, two-edged and pointed, intended rather for thrusting than for cutting. It hung by a bandelier (*balteus*) passing over the left shoulder, or from a body-belt (*cingulum*), and was carried on the right side so as not to be in the way of the shield, which was carried on the left arm. Officers, who had no shields, wore their swords on the left side. The javelin (*pīlum*) was between six and seven feet long, and consisted of a wooden shaft and an iron head which was fitted and rivetted into it. This iron head, when the javelin was hurled into any hard object, would bend, and the weapon would then be made useless for hurling back. The *pilum* weighed about nine pounds, and would carry a distance of from ninety to a hundred feet.

Clothing of the legionary soldiers. Instead of the toga was worn the more convenient *săgum* or *săgulum*, a thick woollen cloak or plaid, reaching to the knee and fastened from the shoulder or round the neck with a brooch or buckle. Under this was a sleeveless tunic (*tŭnĭca*), also of wool. The feet were protected by *călĭgae*, hob-nailed leather boots, reaching half-way up the leg.

Pay and length of service. Caesar fixed the pay of the legionary at 225 denarii a year (about £8), the payment (*stipendium*) being made three times a year, with a small deduction for food and equipment. During the

early days of the republic, citizens were bound to serve between the ages of seventeen and forty-six; after the time of Marius a soldier entered the army for twenty years; but the legionary could obtain his discharge after sixteen campaigns, the horseman after ten. The discharge after full service was called *missio honesta*, for ill-health *causaria*, and for misconduct *ignominiosa*. Time-expired men who served again voluntarily were called *evocati*; they were highly valued, and had special privileges and rewards. They held a higher rank than the common soldier, and were often promoted to be centurions.



THE SOLDIER'S PACK.
(From Trajan's Column.)

The soldier's pack (sarcinae). A Roman soldier on the march had to carry for himself everything he needed, so that the weight of his pack amounted to no less than 45 lb., and it was not without reason that he was said to be *impedītus*, encumbered, when carrying this load. Besides his armour, he had to carry a fortnight's supply of corn (sometimes more), several stakes (*valli*) for entrenchment purposes, a saw, basket, spade, hatchet, and cooking-vessel. All these were carried on a pole, or fastened to one of the stakes, over the left shoulder, while in the left hand were held the javelins, and on the left arm the shield, the

helmet being hung on the breast. The *impedimenta*, the heavy baggage of the army, such as tents, military engines and the like, were carried by baggage-animals, or in waggons. Before a battle the baggage was piled together (*sarcinas conferre*) and put in charge of a special guard (*praesidium*), and the soldier, when rid of his pack, was said to be *expedītus*, unencumbered.

The army on the march (**agmen**). The army when on the march was ordinarily arranged in single column, though, of course, the arrangement would vary according to circumstances. With this formation there were three divisions, the van (*primum agmen*), the main body (*exercitus*, or *omnes copiae*), and the rear-guard (*agmen novissimum* or *extremum*). The van would have to reconnoitre the country and bring news of the enemy, and for this purpose were sent forward either special detachments (*explōrātores*), or single scouts (*spĕcŭlātores*). Another duty of the van was to select and make ready the place for the camp.

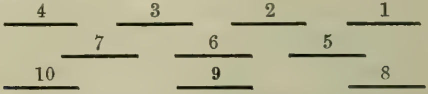
At a fixed distance behind the van marched the main body, and close after it the rear-guard. Each legion was immediately followed by its baggage, with the cavalry riding either on the flanks or in the rear. This arrangement was only followed when there was no expectation of an attack by the enemy.

But where an attack was likely, the line of march was almost that of battle, into which it could easily be changed; Caesar calls it *triplex acies*. In this case the soldiers marched in three parallel columns beside each other, and if an attack were made, the columns, by deploying right and left, would find themselves in the usual battle array, with the baggage in the rear. But Caesar sometimes (as in *B. G.* ii. c. 19) arranged the whole main body in front, then the whole of the baggage, and behind it a rear-guard.

Or, thirdly, the Romans formed a hollow square (*agmen quadratum*), with the baggage in the middle, when a sudden attack was expected.

An average day's march (*iustum iter*) seems to have been about fifteen miles; but in *B. G.* vii. c. 39, Caesar mentions a forced march (*magnum iter*) of three times that distance.

The order of battle (acies). Each legion was regularly drawn up in the triple formation (*triplex ăcies*), that is, of the ten cohorts in a legion four formed the first line, three the second, and three the third; between each cohort was left an interval equal in extent to the length of its front; behind these intervals were placed the cohorts of the second and the third lines respectively. Between each line and the one behind it was an interval equal to the front of a cohort. The men stood ten deep, so that the cohort presented a front of between thirty and forty deep, according to the number of men in a legion. The three lines formed the *quincunx* (like the figures on a die):



If several legions were engaged, they would be drawn up side by side in this formation. Cohorts 1, 2, 3, 4, would first engage the enemy, and if they failed to make an impression or tired, those numbered 5, 6, 7, would advance through the intervals and take their place, while the front four retired to reform and get breath. The third line was held in reserve, and only brought into action if or when the first two proved unsuccessful[1].

[1] Another and more plausible theory is that the cohorts only *advanced* in this formation, and that, before coming to

On either flank the auxiliaries (*alae*) were posted. When the charge was sounded, the legions advanced till within range (*intra teli iactum*), hurled a volley of javelins, and then drew the sword and engaged the enemy hand to hand.

The standards (signa). In the days of arrangement by maniples each maniple had its own *signum*, but after the time of Marius the *ăquĭla* became the standard of the whole legion, and the *signa* were the standards of the different cohorts. The *aquila* consisted of an eagle, usually of silver, carried on the top of a wooden staff or pole, which was shod with iron so that it could be stuck in the ground. As standard-bearer (*aquilifer*) was chosen the bravest and strongest of the centurions attached to the first cohort; over his helmet and armour he wore a bear's skin.



STANDARD-BEARER
(From Trajan's Column)

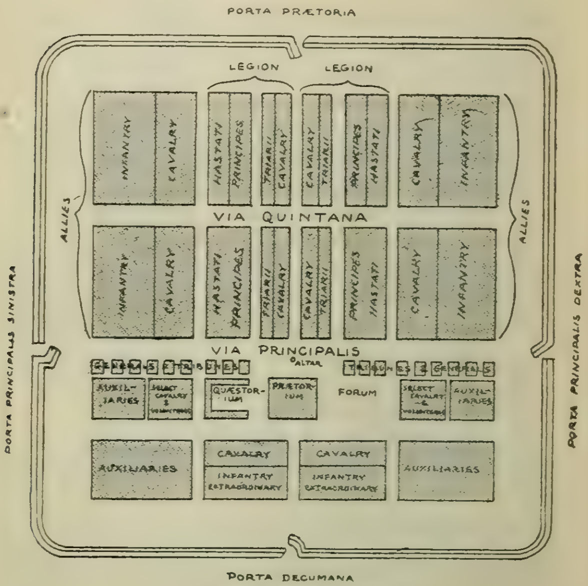
close quarters with the enemy, the cohorts in the front rank extended, until they had doubled their original length of front; thus—

——— .... ——— .... ——— .... ———
4 (3) 3 (2) 2 (1) 1

The cohorts in the rear would also extend and form a continuous line of supports. The *quincunx* arrangement would be much more convenient for manœuvring purposes than a continuous line, but in actual battle the enemy would have poured in between the gaps and played havoc.

The *vexilla* were flags or banners, small pieces of red, white, or purple cloth, which served as standards for the cavalry, and perhaps also for the auxiliaries; the bearer of the *vexillum* was called *vexillarius*.

There was another *vexillum*, the flag of the general, a large red banner placed near his tent (*praetorium*),

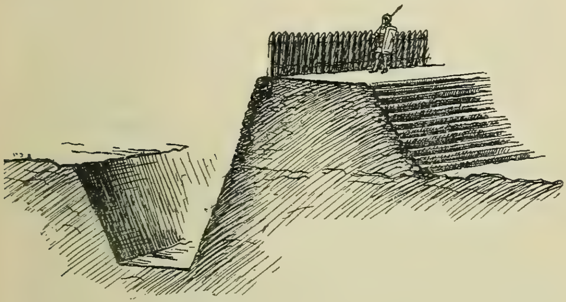


Plan of a Roman Camp.

which, when displayed, was the signal for marching or battle. The importance of the *signa* is shown by the number of phrases in which the word occurs: e. g. *signa convellere*, *ferre*, *efferre*, *tollere*, to break up camp; *signa constituere*, to halt; *signa convertere*, to wheel about;

signa subsequi, to keep in order of battle; *ab signis discedere*, to leave the ranks; *signa inferre*, to advance to the attack; *signa conferre cum*, to engage in battle; and so forth.

The camp. A Roman army never halted for a single night without forming a regular entrenchment (*castra*), big enough to hold all the fighting-men, their beasts of burden, and the baggage. A camp occupied for any length of time was called *castra stativa*; such camps were *castra aestiva*, summer camps, or *castra hiberna*, winter camps. At the end of the day's march a detach-



RAMPART AND DITCH OF A CAMP

ment, usually of scouts and centurions, was sent forward to choose a suitable place which should be convenient for procuring water, wood, and forage, and afford no facilities for attack. The ground being chosen, the first business was to measure and stake out the camp, so that when the legions arrived they might each proceed to the space allotted them. Baggage and arms (except the sword) being laid aside, the men were told off, some for work within the camp, some for fortifying.

No matter how hastily constructed, every camp was

laid out on a regular plan. It was square in form, and the entire position was surrounded by a ditch (*fossa*) which was usually nine feet broad and seven deep, with an embankment (*agger*) on the inside of it, the top of which was defended by a strong fence of palisades (*vallum*). This rampart was separated from the tents by a clear space of 200 feet, which would at once prevent hostile missiles from reaching the tents and allow room for moving troops to defend the walls.

After a suitable site had been chosen, the *praetōrium*, where the consul's tent was to be pitched, was marked out with a white flag. The direction in which the camp was to face was then determined, and a line drawn which intersected the entrenchment at the *porta praetoria* in the front and the *porta decumana* at the back, farthest away from the enemy. At the sides of the camp were also two gates, *porta principālis dextra* and *porta principālis sinistra*, between which ran the main road, the *via principalis*, 100 feet wide. Parallel with this was another street, called *via quintana*, fifty feet wide, dividing the upper part of the camp into equal parts. Between the *via principalis* and the *porta decumana* was the *praetōrium*, a wide space containing the general's tent, the altars, and the *tribūnal*, a bank of earth, from which the general addressed his men or administered justice. To the right of the *praetorium* was the *quaestorium*, a space allotted to the quaestor and the commissariat stores; to the left the *fŏrum*, a meeting-place for the soldiers. At this end of the camp (also between the *via principalis* and the *porta decumana*) were the tents of various select bodies of troops, and along the *via principalis* those of the superior officers. The rest of the camp, from the *via principalis* to the *porta praetoria*, was allotted to the legionaries and the allied troops.

The camp was watched both by day and night; the usual term for the day-guard was *excŭbiae* (*excubias agere*), though *excubiae* is used for a night-guard as well; the day watches were probably changed twice a day. *Vĭgĭliae, vigilias agere, vigilare* are restricted to night duty. The night was divided into four watches, and each guard consisted of four men. *Stationes* is used specially to denote the advanced posts in front of the gates; *custōdes* or *custōdiae* the parties who watched the gates themselves; and *praesidia* the sentinels on the ramparts.

The watchword for the night was communicated (by means of a small wooden tablet, *tessĕra*, on which it was inscribed) by the general to the tribunes and prefects; and through them made known to the troops by the *tesserarius*, a man selected from each company for the purpose.

During the night the rounds of the sentries (*vigilias circumire*) were regularly made by four young men picked out from each *turma*, who received from each sentinel his *tessera*. When the camp was to break up three signals were given: one, to take down tents and pack up; two, to put the baggage on the beasts of burden and in the waggons; three, to march.

Siege operations. There were three ways in which a town might be taken. (1) By means of sudden assault (*oppugnatio repentīna*); in this case the enemy's trenches were filled up with earth, the gates broken in and the walls pulled down or scaled with ladders. If this method of attack failed, there was (2) the blockade (*obsidēre, obsessio*), the object of which was to starve the defenders out by cutting off supplies. The town was surrounded by an inner and an outer wall (*circumvallatio*), the latter as a protection from attack on the part of a relieving force. (3) The third way was the regular siege (*oppugnatio*),

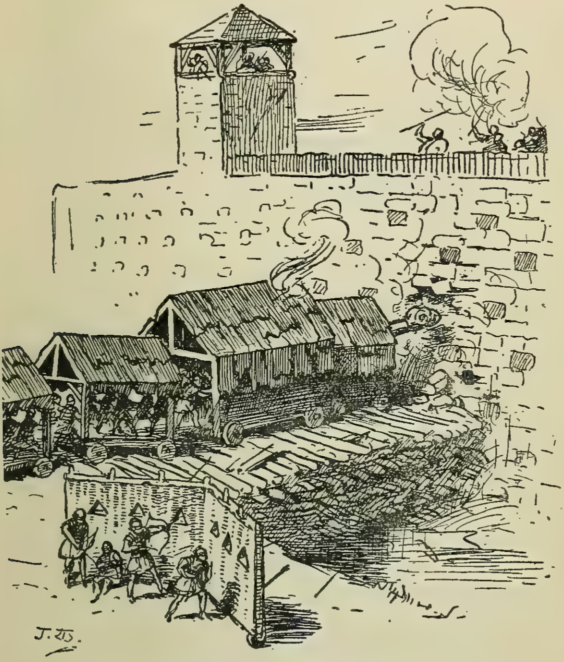
in the case of strongly fortified places which could not be taken by either sudden attack or blockade. The principal work of a regular siege was the mound (*agger*). Made of earth and fascines (*crates*) held together at the sides by wooden scaffolding or stone walls, it was begun at some distance from the wall; and rose by a gradual ascent till on a level with the top of that part of the walls against which the attack was aimed.

Partly on the mound, partly on one side of it, were sometimes placed movable towers (*turres ambulatoriae*) brought up on wheels to the walls. In such cases the height of the mound had merely to be enough to enable those in the *turres* to shoot over the opposing wall. This was probably a quicker way of approach and meant a saving in the height of the mound, but was not so convenient for a column of attack, as a drawbridge (*sambūca*) would have to be let down from it upon the wall to enable the soldiers to gain an entrance. These towers varied in height from 88 to 196 feet, and contained from ten to twenty stories (*tăbulata*), the upper ones filled with artillery (*tormenta*). Besides the artillery, archers and slingers were posted on the outer galleries of the different stories, which were protected by breastworks, while in the lower stories sappers and miners were placed.

The ăries. The battering-ram (*aries*) was the most effective instrument for making a breach in the walls of the besieged town. A stout beam, with a mass of iron at one end shaped like a ram's head, was hung by ropes on a horizontal beam, and swung backwards and forwards so as to loosen the stones of the wall. The loosened stones were picked out of the wall with wall-sickles (*falces murāles*), while single holes were punched in the wall by the wall-borer (*tĕrĕbra*), a ram with a sharp point,

which was pushed forward on rollers. Another instrument of siege was the *tollēno*, a crane with a bucket or basket attached for hoisting the men on to the walls.

The besieged in their turn had various contrivances



BATTERING-RAM AND VINEAE
(From the Triumphal Arch of Septimius Severus).

against these weapons of attack, such as two-pronged forks for overturning the scaling ladders, and cranes with

tongs to seize the soldiers of the enemy and drop them within the town.

Protection for the besieging party was afforded by various contrivances:

(1) *Plūtĕi*, large standing shields, moving forward on wheels.

(2) *Vīnĕae*, long sheds of light scaffolding, 8 feet high, 7 feet broad and 16 feet long, with a roof of boards or wickerwork, and covered with the same at the sides, but open at the ends. The whole frame was covered with raw hides to prevent its being set on fire.

(3) *Musculus*, the mining-hut, a long narrow shed, stronger than the *vīnĕae*, specially for the protection of the mining parties.

(4) *Testūdo ărĭĕtaria*, a shed of planks covered with hides (as a precaution against burning missiles) to protect the men while digging trenches and making their approaches to the walls, or for covering those who worked the battering-ram.

There was another kind of *testūdo*, made by raising the shields over the head and shoulders, and fitting them closely under each other, so that the whole formed a compact covering like the shell of a tortoise,—whence the name. The soldiers in the first rank stood upright, those in the second stooped a little, and each line successively was a little lower than the one in front of it, till in the last the soldiers rested on one knee. The advantages of this sloping *testūdo* were firstly, that stones and missiles rolled off it; secondly, that other soldiers could advance over it to attack the enemy upon the walls. The various kinds of *testūdo* were met by throwing down masses of stone, pouring down molten lead or pitch, or by the use of burning arrows. The mound was met by countermining or setting it on fire;

and against the towers the besieged would try fire, artillery discharged from the walls, or the erection of counter-towers.

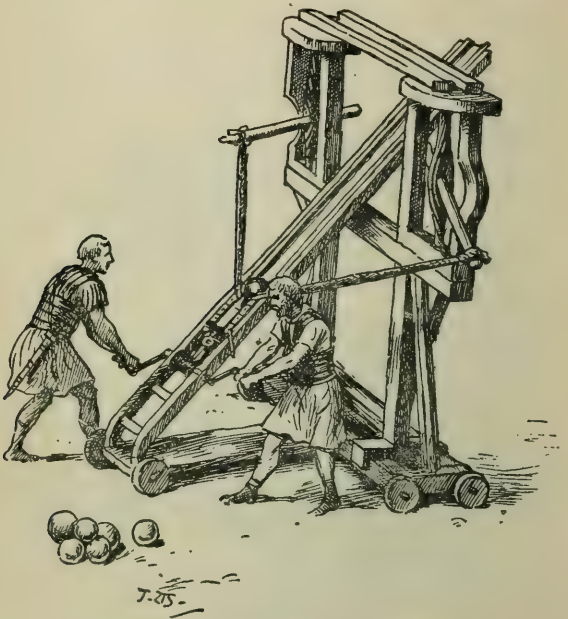
Roman artillery. The general term for any kind of



TESTUDO (From the Column of Antoninus).

military engine which discharged missiles is *tormentum* (*torquēre*, to twist); the impetus was produced by means of any elastic or twisted substance. *Tormenta* were of two kinds: *catapultae* or *scorpiones*, for discharging heavy

darts and spears horizontally; and *ballistae*, which shot stones, beams or balls (up to about 160 lb. weight) at an angle of from 45 to 50 degrees. The average range of

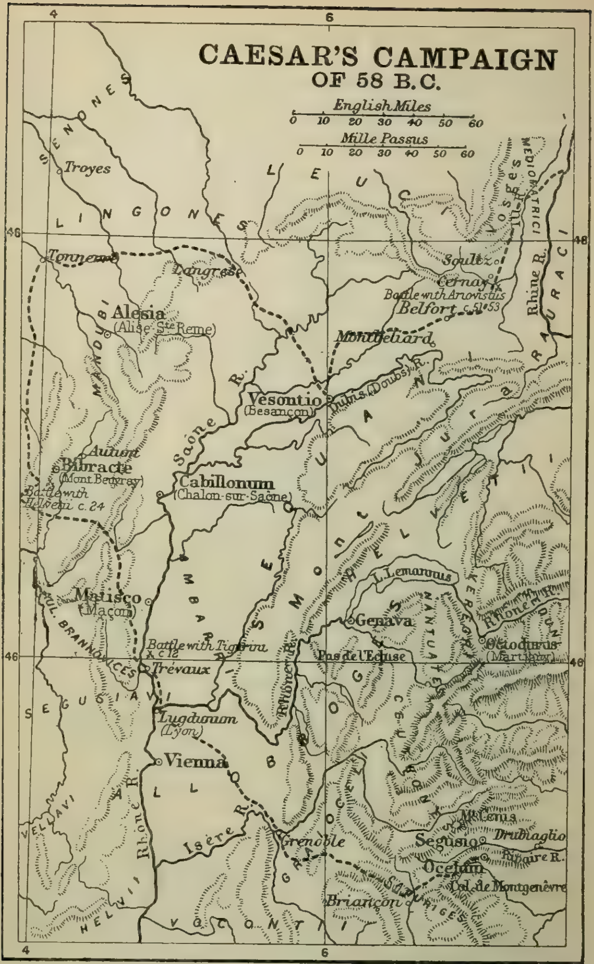


Ballista.

both was about 400 yards, and they were repaired and kept in order by the *fabri*.

Musical instruments. The only musicians mentioned by Caesar are the *bucinatores* and the *tībīcines*. The *būcĭna* or bugle was a curved trumpet, and was used to mark the *vigiliae* or night watches, and to summon the

soldiers; the *tŭba*, a straight trumpet, gave the signal to assemble, get ready, attack or retreat. Other instruments were the *cornu*, horn, and the *lĭtuus*, cavalry trumpet. In battle the various trumpets were all played together by way of inspiriting the troops and frightening the enemy.



G. Philip & Son, London & Liverpool.

NOTES (1) The exact position of Ocelum is doubtful; according to some authorities it was further east than on the map, about Drubiaglio on the Ripaire.

(2) Some authorities place the site of the battle with the Helvetii at a point between fifteen and twenty miles N.E. of Autun, instead of just S. of Bibracte.

C. IULII CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER PRIMUS

I.

The divisions of Gaul and character of its inhabitants.

Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate Provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant, atque ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent important; proximique sunt Germanis qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt: qua de causa Helvetii quoque re-

liquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani quae est ad Hispaniam pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

II.

The Campaign against the Helvetii.

Orgetorix and the Helvetii: why they wished to emigrate.

Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus regni cupiditate inductus coniurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex

parte monte Iura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat ut et minus late vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; qua ex parte homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX patebant.

III.

The Helvetii prepare to start: Casticus the Sequanian and Dumnorix the Aeduan, to gain their private ends, promise Orgetorix support.

His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent comparare, iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sementes quam maximas facere ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt: in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cuius pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque

Dumnorigi Aeduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et iusiurandum dant, et regno occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

IV.

Orgetorix brought to trial for conspiracy: his escape and death.

Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coegerunt: damnatum poenam sequi oportebat ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam ad hominum milia decem undique coegit, et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit: per eos ne causam diceret se eripuit. Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis ius suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

V.

The Helvetii, preparatory to starting, burn their villages, and induce their neighbours to follow their example.

Post eius mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id quod constituerant facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt, frumentum omne praeter quod secum portaturi erant comburunt, ut domum reditionis spe sublata paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mensum molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre iubent. Persuadent Rauricis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis uti, eodem usi consilio, oppidis suis vicisque exustis una cum eis proficiscantur; Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

VI.

Two routes open to them; they choose the one through the Province.

Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons autem

altissimus impendebat ut facile perpauci prohibere possent: alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nonnullis locis vado transītur. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Genava. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur, existimabant, vel vi coacturos ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant: is dies erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr. L. Pisone, A. Gabinio consulibus.

VII.

Caesar hastens to Geneva; embassy from the Helvetii; Caesar defers giving an answer.

Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat: erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una: pontem qui erat ad Genavam iubet rescindi. Ubi de eius adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, cuius legationis Nammeius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent, sibi esse

in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum; rogare ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoria tenebat L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub iugum



Passing under the Yoke. (From descriptions.)

missum, concedendum non putabat, neque homines inimico animo data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi temperaturos ab iniuria et maleficio existimabat: tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum

milites quos imperaverat convenirent, legatis respondit: diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum; si quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

VIII.

He establishes a line of forts between Lake Lemannus and Mount Jura. He warns the Helvetii not to persist in their intention; they try, without success, to cross the Rhone.

Interea ea legione quam secum habebat, militibusque qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iuram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit. Eo opere perfecto praesidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere posset. Ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legatis venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare, et si vim facere conentur prohibiturum ostendit. Helvetii ea spe deiecti navibus iunctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi, hoc conatu destiterunt.

IX.

Dumnorix induces the Sequani to let them pass through their territory.

Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua Sequanis invitis propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat amicus quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat, et quam plurimas civitates suo beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant: Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et iniuria transeant.

X.

Caesar leaves Labienus to guard the Rhone and returns to Italy for reinforcements, with which he forces his way north-west to meet the Helvetii.

Caesari renuntiatur Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in provincia. Id si fieret, intellegebat magno cum periculo provinciae futurum

ut homines bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas ei munitioni quam fecerat T. Labienum legatum praefecit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant ex hibernis educit, et qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutrones et Graioceli et Caturiges locis superioribus occupatis itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsis, ab Ocelo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit, inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiavos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

XI.

The Aedui and the Allobroges appeal to him for protection against the Helvetii.

Helvetii iam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, cum se suaque ab eis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: Ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore Aedui

Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduorum, Caesarem certiorem faciunt sese depopulatis agris non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt, et demonstrant sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit dum, omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis, in Santones Helvetii pervenirent.

XII.

Caesar overtakes and surprises one canton of the Helvetii while crossing the Arar; after destroying them he goes in pursuit of the rest.

Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis in utram partem fluat iudicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus iunctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est tres iam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus magnam partem eorum concidit: reliqui sese fugae mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus; nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cum

domo exisset patrum nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulem interfecerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive casu, sive consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps



Making a Bridge of Rafts and Boats.
(The boats from Trajan's Column, the raft from a mosaic, and the punt from a wall-painting.)

poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas sed etiam privatas iniurias ultus est, quod eius soceri L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio, quo Cassium, interfecerant.

XIII.

Alarmed at his unexpected approach, the Helvetii send to propose a compromise, and warn him as to the consequences of refusing their terms.

Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum traducit. Helvetii repentino eius adventu commoti, cum id quod ipsi diebus viginti aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intellegerent, legatos ad eum mittunt, cuius legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare egit : Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset : sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, cum ei qui flumen transissent suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magno opere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret: se ita a patribus maioribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

XIV.

Caesar, in reply, protests against the insolent and outrageous conduct of the Helvetii, but offers peace on certain conditions, which they refuse.

His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent: qui si alicuius iniuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum quod neque commissum a se intellegeret quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim tentassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune iniurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab eis sibi dentur uti ea quae polliceantur facturos intellegat, et si Aeduis de iniuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum eis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a maioribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare consuerint: eius rei

populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc responso dato discessit.

XV.

The Helvetii continue their advance, closely followed by the Romans, for fifteen days.

Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere nonnunquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum interesset.

XVI.

The Aedui fail to supply the Romans with the promised corn; Caesar reproaches them for their ingratitude in deserting him at the pinch.

Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam propter

frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat: eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, propterea uti minus poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem, graviter eos accusat quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eis non sublevetur, praesertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit; multo etiam gravius quod sit destitutus queritur.

XVII.

Liscus explains that the Aedui are terrorised by certain of their leading men, who are also disclosing Caesar's plans to the enemy.

Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem

deterrere ne frumentum conferant, quod debeant; praestare si iam principatum Galliae obtinere non possent, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia perferre; neque dubitare quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem nostra consilia quaeque in castris gerantur hostibus enuntiari: hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod necessariam rem coactus Caesari enuntiarit, intellegere sese quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.

XVIII.

By questioning Liscus privately, he discovers that Dumnorix is the person meant. Reasons for the hostility of Dumnorix to Rome; his ambitious designs and his treachery.

Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat, sed quod pluribus praesentibus eas res iactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solo ea quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum: complures annos portoria reliquaque omnia Aeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largi-

endum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere, neque solum domi sed etiam apud finitimas



Roman Cavalry Soldier. (From Trajan's Column.)

civitates largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse, ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse. Favere et cupere



Battle between Romans and Gauls. (From a sarcophagus in the Capitoline Museum, Rome)

Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem, odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia eius deminuta, et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire: imperio populi Romani non modo de regno sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratia desperare. Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum a Dumnorige atque eius equitibus (nam equitatui, quem auxilio Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat): eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

XIX.

Caesar, before punishing Dumnorix, sends for and consults his brother Divitiacus.

Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios traduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo iniussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere iuberet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam

fidem, iustitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam ne eius supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet verebatur. Itaque, prius quam quidquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari iubet, et cotidianis interpretibus remotis per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur: simul commonefacit quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petit atque hortatur, ut sine eius offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuat, vel civitatem statuere iubeat.

XX.

Divitiacus admits that the charges are true, but entreats Caesar to forgive him. Caesar lets Dumnorix off with a warning, and sets spies to watch him.

Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset: quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur. Sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimatu-

rum non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prendit; consolatus rogat finem orandi faciat; tanti eius apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et rei publicae iniuriam et suum dolorem eius voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat ostendit, quae ipse intellegat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

XXI.

Caesar sends Labienus with two legions, to occupy a hill at the foot of which the Helvetii are encamped.

Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent misit. Renuntiatum est facilem esse. De tertia vigilia T. Labienum legatum pro praetore cum duabus legionibus et eis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu L. Sullae et

postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

XXII.

A false alarm: Considius mistakes Labienus and his detachment for the enemy.

Prima luce. cum summus mons a T. Labieno



GALLIC ENSIGNS, WAR-HORNS, AND SWORD.
(From bas-reliefs on the Triumphal Arch at Orange; the Sword from Pergamon.)

teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex

captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admisso ad eum accurrit, dicit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros expectabat proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse et Considium timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiasse. Eo die quo consuerat intervallo hostes sequitur, et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

XXIII.

Caesar turns aside to Bibracte, to obtain supplies. The Helvetii also change their direction and follow the Romans, harassing their rear.

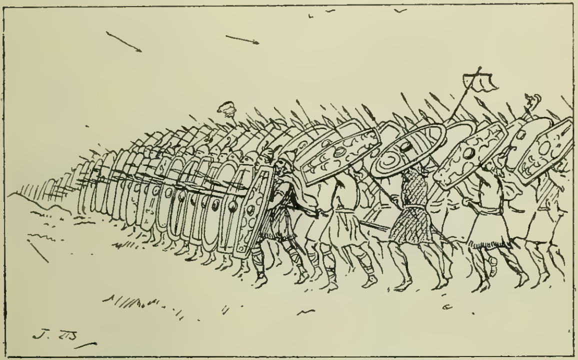
Postridie eius diei, quod omnino biduum supererat, cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit: iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos L. Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod

timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis proelium non commisissent, sive eo quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent, commutato consilio atque itinere converso nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

XXIV.

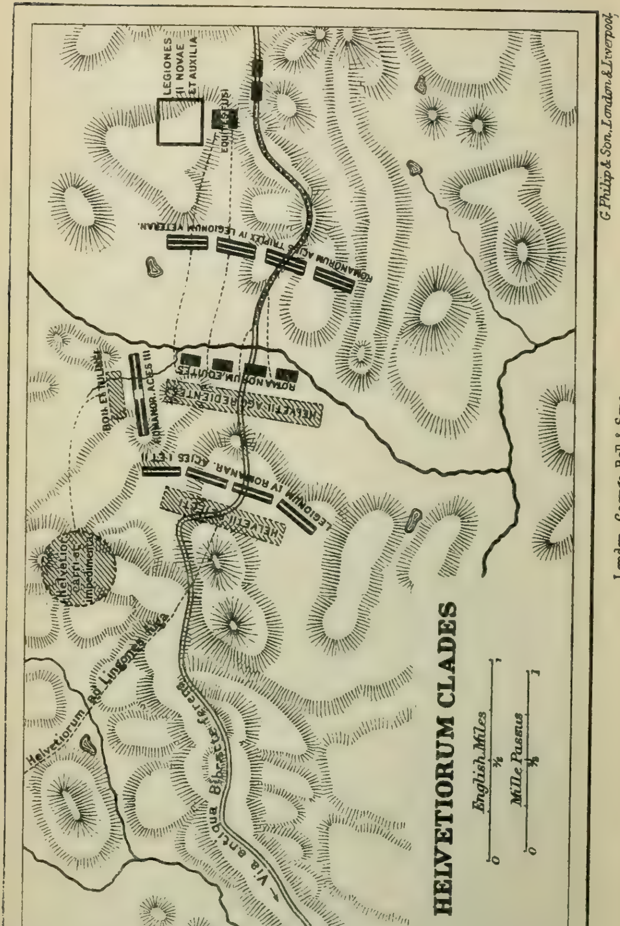
Caesar draws up his forces on a hill-side for battle; the Helvetii prepare to give battle.

Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque, qui



Gallic Method of Advancing in Phalanx.
Front of about 500 men, and depth of about sixteen men.
(From descriptions.)

sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum



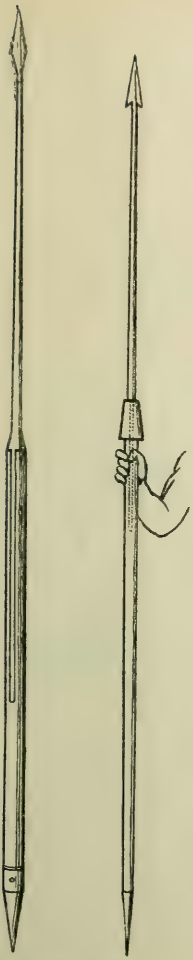
London, George Bell & Sons

quattuor veteranorum; sed in summo iugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocari, ac totum montem hominibus compleri et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri iussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confertissima acie, reiecto nostro equitatu, phalange facta sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

XXV.

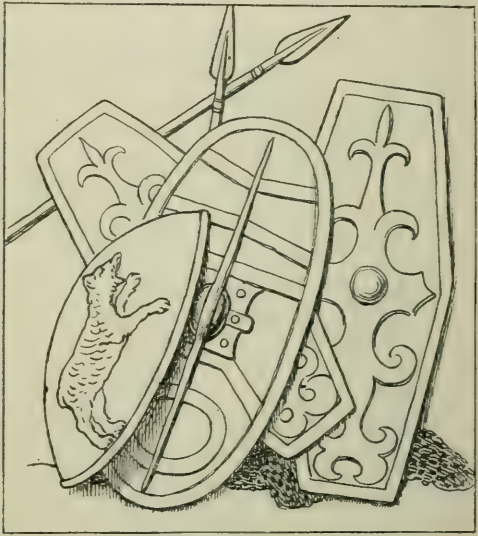
The Romans fire a volley of javelins, and then charge with swords; the enemy give way, and retire to another hill. The Boii and Tulingi assail the Romans on the flank, and the Helvetii return to the attack.

Caesar primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium commisit. Milites e loco superiore pilis missis facile hostium pha-



ROMAN *Pila*

langem perfregerunt. Ea disiecta, gladiis destrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra



Gallic Shields and Spears.
(From a bas-relief from Pergamon and from the Triumphal Arch at Orange.)

impedita satis commode pugnare poterant, multi ut diu iactato brachio praeoptarent scutum manu emittere et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coepe-

runt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudebant et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere nostros latere aperto aggressi circumvenire, et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa signa bipartito intulerunt: prima ac secunda acies ut victis ac summotis resisteret, tertia ut venientes sustineret.

XXVI.

The battle stubbornly contested till late at night; the enemy make a rampart of their baggage, but are finally defeated with great slaughter, and flee to the territory of the Lingones.

Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt: nam hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros obiecerant, et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela coniiciebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas subiiciebant nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuerunt eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt: nullam

partem noctis itinere intermisso in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litteras nuntiosque misit, ne eos frumento neve alia re iuvarent: qui si iuvissent, se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse triduo intermisso cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

XXVII.

After three days' rest, Caesar goes in pursuit. The Helvetii send envoys to sue for peace. Caesar demands hostages and the surrender of their arms; 6,000 of them try to escape to the Rhone.



Suing Peace from the Romans. (From Trajan's Column.)

Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in

itinere convenissent seque ad pedes proiecissent suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum expectare iussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissa, circiter hominum milia VI eius pagi, qui Verbigenus appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne armis traditis supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod in tanta multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt.

XXVIII.

These are brought back and put to death; the rest admitted to terms. The Helvetii sent back to their own territory, and ordered to rebuild their forts and villages. The Boii settled among the Aedui.

Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quorum per fines ierant, his uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis in deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latovicos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit, et quod omnibus frugibus amissis domi nihil erat quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit ut eis frumenti copiam facerent: ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere iussit. Id

ea maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios petentibus Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem iuris libertatisque condicionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

XXIX.

The number of the Helvetii and their allies who emigrated, and of those who returned home.

In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt, litteris Graecis confectae, et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat, capitum Helvetiorum milia CCLXIII, Tulingorum milia XXXVI, Latovicorum XIV, Rauricorum XXIII, Boiorum XXXII; ex his, qui arma ferre possent ad milia XCII. Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eorum qui domum redierunt censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium C et X.

XXX.

The Campaign against Ariovistus.

Caesar receives the congratulations of the other Gallic states. They ask his leave to hold a general assembly, the result of which is not to be made known.

Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt: Intellegere sese, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bello repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse, propterea quod eo consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum iudicassent, reliquasque civitates stipendiarias haberent. Petierunt uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere, idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: sese habere quasdam res, quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere vellent. Ea re permissa diem concilio constituerunt, et iureiurando ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

XXXI.

Divitiacus explains the disastrous results which have followed the calling in by the Arverni of German mercenaries;

Eo concilio dimisso idem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem reverterunt, petieruntque uti sibi secreto de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. Ea re impetrata sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes proiecerunt: Non minus se id contendere et laborare, ne ea, quae dixissent, enuntiarentur, quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent; propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. Locutus est pro his Divitiacus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse duas; harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse uti ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesserentur. Horum primo circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse: posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassent, traductos plures: nunc esse in Gallia ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum his Aeduos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse.

how they have cowed the Aedui and what their help has cost the Sequani.

Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute et populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitatis et iureiurando civitatem obstringere sese neque obsides repetituros neque auxilium a populo Romano imploraturos, neque recusaturos quo minus perpetuo sub illorum dicione atque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex omni civitate Aeduorum, qui adduci non potuerit ut iuraret aut liberos suos obsides daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque iureiurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed peius victoribus Sequanis quam Aeduis victis accidisse; propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere iuberet, propterea quod paucis mensibus ante Harudum milia hominum XXIV ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur.

Gaul rapidly becoming a German province, unless Rome puts a stop to the aggression of Ariovistus.

Futurum esse paucis annis, uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent; neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem

victus cum illa comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cuiusque liberos poscere et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium; non posse eius imperia diutius sustinere. Nisi quid in Caesare populoque Romano sit auxilii, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant fortunamque, quaecunque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sumat. Caesarem vel auctoritate sua atque exercitus, vel recenti victoria, vel nomine populi Romani deterrere posse ne maior multitudo Germanorum Rhenum traducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti iniuria posse defendere.

XXXII.

They all (except the Sequani, who dare not, for fear of Ariovistus) beg Caesar to interfere on their behalf.

Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita, omnes qui aderant magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. Animadvertit Caesar unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere quas ceteri facerent, sed tristes capite demisso terram intueri.

Eius rei quae causa esset miratus, ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere. Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Aeduus respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem et graviorem fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent, absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate eius essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

XXXIII.

Caesar, both for the sake of the friendly Aedui and because he feels the state of affairs discreditable and dangerous to Rome, resolves to take the matter up.

His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram; magnam se habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem iniuriis facturum. Hac oratione habita concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam putaret; imprimis, quod Aeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepenumero a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in dicione videbat Germanorum teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intelle-

gebat; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum sibi et rei publicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire populo Romano periculosum videbat; neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sequanos a provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret; quibus rebus quam maturrime occurrendum putabat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur.

XXXIV.

He asks Ariovistus to meet him: the latter replies that Caesar must come to him: what business, however, can Rome have in his *part of Gaul?*

Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret, qui ab eo postularent uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio deligeret: velle sese de re publica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse: si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno commeatu atque

molimento in unum locum contrahere posse; sibi autem mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnino populo Romano negotii esset.

XXXV.

Caesar formulates his demands: (1) *no more Germans to cross the Rhine*; (2) *hostages to be restored to the Aedui*; (3) *the Aedui to be left in peace.*

His responsis ad Caesarem relatis iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit: Quoniam tanto suo populique Romani beneficio affectus, cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus esset, hanc sibi populoque Romano gratiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitatus gravaretur neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret, haec esse quae ab eo postularet: primum, ne quam multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret; deinde obsides, quos haberet ab Aeduis, redderet, Sequanisque permitteret, ut, quos illi haberent, voluntate eius reddere illis liceret; neve Aeduos iniuria lacesseret, neve his sociisque eorum bellum inferret. Si id ita fecisset, sibi populoque Romano perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram: si non impetraret, sese, quoniam M. Messala M. Pisone consulibus senatus censuisset, uti, quicunque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo rei publicae facere posset, Aeduos ceterosque amicos populi Romani defenderet, se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum.

XXXVI.

Ariovistus replies that Rome has no right to interfere with him; the Aedui have gone to war and must take the consequences. He pooh-poohs Caesar's warnings.

Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Ius esse belli, ut, qui vicissent, eis, quos vicissent, quemadmodum vellent imperarent: item populum Romanum victis non ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consuesse. Si ipse populo Romano non praescriberet quemadmodum suo iure uteretur, non oportere sese a populo Romano in suo iure impediri. Aeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam tentassent et armis congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem iniuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. Aeduis se obsides redditurum non esse, neque his neque eorum sociis iniuria bellum illaturum, si in eo manerent, quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent: si id non fecissent, longe eis fraternum nomen populi Romani afuturum. Quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret, se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederetur: intellecturum quid invicti Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos XIV tectum non subissent, virtute possent.

XXXVII.

Fresh complaints on the part of the Aedui and the Trevĕri. Caesar hastens by forced marches against Ariovistus.

Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur, et legati ab Aeduis et a Treveris veniebant: Aedui questum, quod Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur: sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse; Treveri autem, pagos centum Sueborum ad ripas Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; eis praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium fratres. Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer commotus maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Sueborum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese coniunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque, re frumentaria quam celerrime potuit comparata, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

XXXVIII.

Hearing that Ariovistus intends to attack Vesontio, he proceeds to occupy and entrench it.

Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere, triduique viam a suis finibus processisse. Id ne accideret, magno opere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant, summa



Besançon (Vesontio). (From a drawing.)

erat in eo oppido facultas, idque natura loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis ut circino circumductum paene totum oppidum cingit: reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum mille sexcentorum, qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine, ita ut radices montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppido coniungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium collocat.

XXXIX.

In consequence of alarming reports concerning the ferocity of the Germans, a panic seizes the Roman army.

Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque causa moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant (saepenumero sese cum his congressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum ferre potuisse), tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem secuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum alius alia

causa illata, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petebat ut eius voluntate discedere liceret; nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ei, qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque quique equitatui praeerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum, quae inter eos atque Ariovistum intercederent, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere dicebant. Nonnulli etiam Caesari renuntiabant, cum castra moveri ac signa ferri iussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites neque propter timorem signa laturos.

XL.

Caesar sharply rebukes his men and shows them that their fears are groundless; these terrible Germans not invincible.

Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato concilio omniumque ordinum ad id concilium adhibitis centurionibus vehementer eos incusavit: primum, quod aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent.

Ariovistum se consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse : cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum iudicaret ? Sibi quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum perspecta, eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur, aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent ? Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum Cimbris et Teutonis a Gaio Mario pulsis non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur ; factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quam a nobis accepissent, sublevarent. Ex quo iudicari posse quantum haberet in se boni constantia, propterea quod, quos aliquamdiu inermos sine causa timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superassent. Denique hos esse eosdem, quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi non solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus plerumque superarint, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerint.

Surely he can be trusted to out-general a horde of savages! He makes a special appeal to the tenth legion.

Si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos, si quaererent, reperire posse diuturnitate belli defatigatis Gallis Ariovistum, cum multos menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset

neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes iam de pugna et dispersos subito adortum magis ratione et consilio quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros atque imperitos locus fuisset, hac ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus capi posse. Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem angustiasque itinerum conferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescribere viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae: frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingones subministrare, iamque esse in agris frumenta matura; de itinere ipsos brevi tempore iudicaturos. Quod non fore dicto audientes neque signa laturi dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri: scire enim, quibuscunque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gesta fortunam defuisse, aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam esse convictam: suam innocentiam perpetua vita, felicitatem Helvetiorum bello esse perspectam. Itaque se, quod in longiorem diem collaturus fuisset, repraesentaturum, et proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturum, ut quam primum intellegere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione iturum, de qua non dubitaret, sibique eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

XLI.

His speech produces an excellent effect; the legions apologize. The army starts to meet Ariovistus.

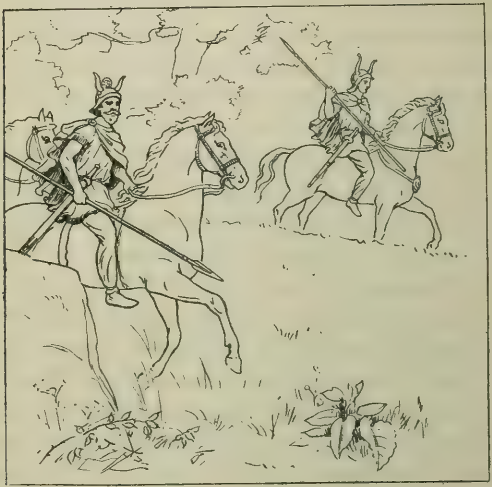
Hac oratione habita mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est; princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum iudicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. Deinde reliquae legiones, cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centurionibus, egerunt ut Caesari satisfacerent: se nec unquam dubitasse neque timuisse, neque de summa belli suum iudicium sed imperatoris esse existimavisse. Eorum satisfactione accepta, et itinere exquisito per Divitiacum, quod ex Gallis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut milium amplius quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quarta vigilia, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimo die cum iter non intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse.

XLII.

Ariovistus proposes an interview on certain conditions, which Caesar accepts.

Cognito Caesaris adventu Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset;

seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare. Non respuit condicionem Caesar, iamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti denegasset, ultro polliceretur, magnamque in spem veniebat pro suis tantis populique Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulatis, fore uti



Gallic Horse-soldiers.
(From bas-relief on a monument in the Museum at Aix.)

pertinacia desisteret. Dies colloquio dictus est ex eo die quintus. Interim saepe ultro citroque cum legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit, ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: vereri se ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur:

uterque cum equitatu veniret; alia ratione sese non esse venturum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interposita causa tolli volebat, neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatui committere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis eo legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat, imponere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset, haberet. Quod cum fieret, non irridicule quidam ex militibus decimae legionis dixit: plus quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum se in cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem habiturum, nunc ad equum rescribere.

XLIII.

The conference takes place midway between the camps. Caesar remonstrates with Ariovistus on his treatment of the Aedui, and repeats his former demands.

Planities erat magna et in ea tumulus terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. Eo ut erat dictum ad colloquium venerunt. Legionem Caesar, quam equis vexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo constiterunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter se denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit. Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar initio orationis sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a senatu, quod

amicus, quod munera amplissima missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse et pro magnis hominum officiis consuesse tribui docebat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iustam haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate sua ac senatus ea praemia consecutum. Docebat etiam quam veteres quamque iustae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent; quae senatus consulta, quoties quamque honorifica in eos facta essent; ut omni tempore totius Galliae principatum Aedui tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia, dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse: quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id eis eripi quis pati posset? Postulavit deinde eadem, quae legatis in mandatis dederat, ne aut Aeduis aut eorum sociis bellum inferret; obsides redderet; si nullam partem Germanorum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.

XLIV.

Ariovistus, in a blustering speech, declares himself aggrieved by Roman interference in his dominions.

Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit, de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: Transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis; non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedes

habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere iure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse ac contra se castra habuisse: eas omnes copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse decertare; si pace uti velint, iniquum esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportere, idque se ea spe petisse. Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittatur et dediticii subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facere: eius rei testimonio esse, quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod bellum non intulerit, sed defenderit.

He is here by invitation, and only fighting in self-defence. Caesar, in his own interests, had better withdraw.

Se prius in Galliam venisse quam populum Romanum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciae finibus egressum. Quid sibi vellet? cur in suas possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse

iniquos, quod in suo iure se interpellaremus. Quod fratres Aeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut non sciret neque bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos in his contentionibus, quas Aedui secum et cum Sequanis habuissent, auxilio populi Romani usos esse. Debere se suspicari simulata Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui opprimendi causa habere. Qui nisi decedat atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed pro hoste habiturum. Quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romani gratum esse facturum: id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod si discessisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum, et, quaecumque bella geri vellet, sine ullo eius labore et periculo confecturum.

XLV.

Caesar replies, pointing out to Ariovistus the groundlessness of his statements.

Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset: neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati, uti optime merentes socios desereret, neque se iudicare Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani.

Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovisset neque in provinciam redegisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romani iustissimum esse in Gallia imperium: si iudicium senatus observari oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.

XLVI.

Treacherous attack by the German cavalry, which brings the conference to an abrupt end.

Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est equites Ariovisti propius tumulum accedere et ad nostros adequitare, lapides telaque in nostros conicere. Caesar loquendi finem facit, seque ad suos recepit suisque imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent. Nam etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut pulsis hostibus dici posset eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in vulgus militum elatum est, qua arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros eius equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut diremisset, multo maior alacritas studiumque pugnandi maius exercitui iniectum est.

XLVII.

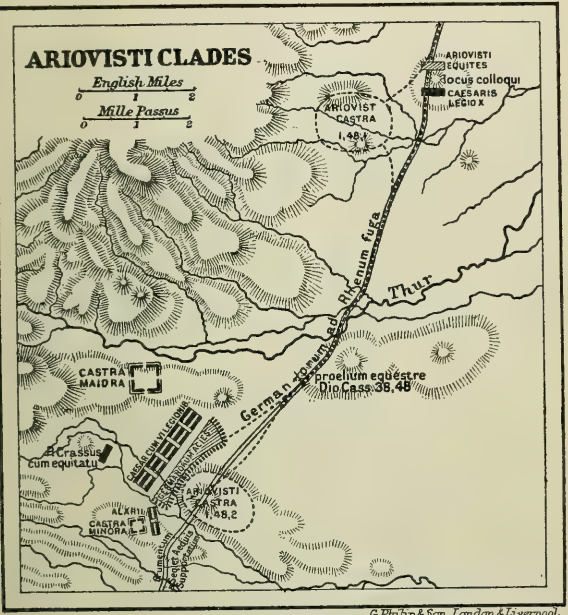
Ariovistus proposes a second conference, to which Caesar sends Procillus and Mettius. They are arrested as spies by the Germans.

Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo; uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret, aut, si id minus vellet, e suis legatis aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie eius diei Germani retineri non potuerant, quin in nostros tela conicerent. Legatum e suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris obiecturum existimabat. Commodissimum visum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate adulescentem, cuius pater a C. Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, qua multa iam Ariovistus longinqua consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittere, et M. Mettium, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. His mandavit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cognoscerent et ad se referrent. Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo praesente conclamavit: Quid ad se venirent? an speculandi causa? Conantes dicere prohibuit et in catenas coniecit.

XLVIII.

Ariovistus moves his forces near the Roman camp, but declines to enter on a general engagement. The German method of fighting.

Eodem die castra promovit et milibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie



G Philip & Son, London & Liverpool.

London; George Bell & Sons

eius diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit et milibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit

eo consilio, uti frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequanis et Aeduis supportaretur, Caesarem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proelio cotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae salutis causa delegerant. Cum his in proeliis versabantur, ad hos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid erat durius, concurrebant: si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat, circumsistebant: si quo erat longius prodeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut iubis equorum sublevati cursum adaequarent.

XLIX.

Caesar fortifies a second camp, to which he sends two legions.

Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sexcentos ab his castris idoneum locum delegit, acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam

castra munire iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, uti dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim milia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohiberent.



Fortifying the Camp. (From Trajan's Column.)

Nihilo setius Caesar, ut ante constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Munitis castris duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quattuor reliquas in castra maiora reduxit.

L.

Ariovistus at last attacks the second camp, and a sharp engagement takes place. Reason for Germans' reluctance to begin fighting.

Proximo die instituto suo Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit paulumque a maioribus castris progressus aciem instruxit, hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret, misit. Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus, multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus, in castra reduxit. Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matres familiae eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium committi ex usu esset necne; eas ita dicere: non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.

LI.

Caesar forces on a general engagement: arrangement of the German forces.

Postridie eius diei Caesar praesidio utrisque castris, quod satis esse visum est, reliquit; omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus

constituit, quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis uteretur; ipse triplici instructa acie usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt generatimque constituerunt paribus intervallis, Harudes, Marcomanos, Triboces, Vangi-



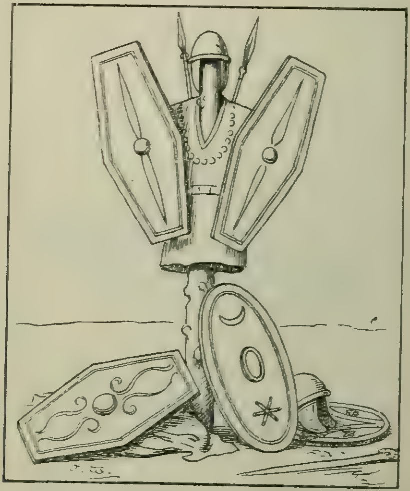
CARTS AND WAGGONS.
(From the Column of Marcus Aurelius and Etruscan reliefs.)

ones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suebos, omnemque aciem suam redis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes passis manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent.

LII.

The Romans, successful on the right, are outnumbered on the left. Crassus sends the third line to their help.

Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet; ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam



German Shields.
(From a Trophy on a Coin and Trajan's Column.)

partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes

repente celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes coniciendi non daretur. Reiectis pilis comminus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter ex consuetudine sua phalange facta impetus gladiorum exceperunt. Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent et scuta manibus revellerent et desuper vulnerarent. Cum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem premebant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulescens, qui equitatui praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam ei qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

LIII.

Rout of the Germans; Ariovistus escapes, but his wives are killed. Procillus and Mettius rescued.

Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum milia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinque pervenerunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi tranare contenderunt, aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem reppererunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugit; reliquos omnes equitatu consecuti nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domo secum

duxerat, altera Norica, regis Voccionis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat a fratre missam: utraque in ea fuga periit. Duae filiae harum, altera occisa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fuga trinis catenis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostes equitatu persequentem incidit. Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem



Boats at a Riverside Wharf. (From Trajan's Column.)

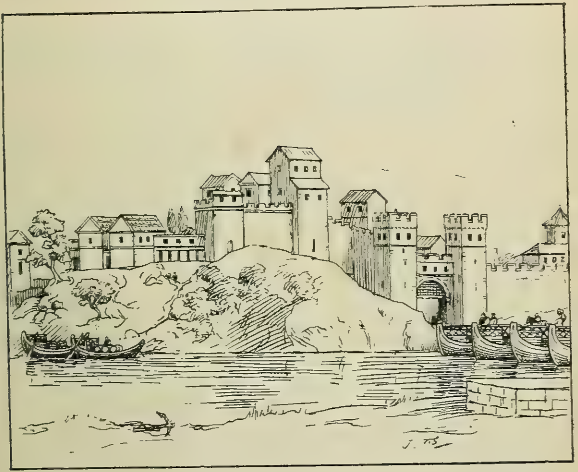
quam ipsa victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium sibi restitutum videbat, neque eius calamitate de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quidquam fortuna deminuerat. Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur

an in aliud tempus reservaretur; sortium beneficio se esse incolumem. Item M. Mettius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

LIV.

End of the campaigns of 58 B.C. *Caesar goes into hither Gaul to hold assizes.*

Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato Suebi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt;



ARMY QUARTERS ON THE BANKS OF A RIVER, WITH BRIDGE OF BOATS. (From Trajan's Column.)

quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti magnum ex his numerum occiderunt.

Caesar, una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis, maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit; hibernis Labienum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

NOTES TO CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

BOOK I

NOTES

I.

Line 1. **Gallia . . . omnis,** 'Gaul as a whole,' i.e. the country from the Rhine to the Pyrenees, corresponding to modern France and Belgium with part of Germany and Switzerland, but exclusive of the Roman 'province' in the south-east.

3. **nostrā:** sc. *linguâ.*

4. **lingua, institutis, legibus,** 'in speech, customs, laws'; abl. of respect. *Instituta* are customs established by usage as opposed to laws enacted by government.

6. **dividit** agrees in number with the nearest subject *Sequana,* being understood with *Garumna* and *Matrona.*

8. **humanitate,** 'civilization'; all that tends to refine men.

Provinciae: also called *Gallia Narbonensis* from the town of *Narbo*; see Introduction, p. 6.

9. **minime:** with *saepe,* 'it is very rarely that traders travel to them.'

12. **incolunt** is used both transitively, as in l. 2 above, and, as here, intransitively.

quibuscum: *cum* follows its case when used with relative, personal, and reflexive pronouns; *mecum, secum,* but *cum eo.*

14. **virtute:** abl. of respect.

15, 16. **cum . . . prohibent,** 'when they are keeping.' When *cum* is strictly temporal it takes the indicative; also when it means 'whenever' or 'since'; e.g. *cum domum redii, vestem exuo,* 'whenever I return home, I change my coat'; *centum sunt anni cum lex lata est,* 'it is a hundred years since

the law was proposed.' It is also used with the causal subjunctive (= since), and the concessive (= although). With the impf. and plupf. subj. *cum* ('when') expresses not only time but accompanying circumstances.

16. **finibus:** abl. of separation or place from which.

17. **eorum:** i.e. of the inhabitants of Gaul.

17, 18. **quam . . . dictum est,** 'the part which, I have said, the Gauls occupy.' 'To obtain' is *consequi, adipisci.* Similarly contrast *occupare, recipere, percipere* with 'occupy,' 'receive,' 'perceive.'

20. **ab Sequanis,** 'on the side of the Sequani'; like *a tergo, ex utraque parte, a dextro,* &c.

21. **ad septentriones,** 'northerly'; that is, as compared with the province.

22. **Galliae:** i.e. Central Gaul as described in l. 5 above, not *omnis Gallia* as in l. 1.

23, 24. **spectant . . . solem,** 'face north-east' of Gaul.

26. **ad Hispaniam,** 'off Spain,' the Bay of Biscay.

II.

2, 3. **M. Messāla . . . consulibus:** abl. abs., 'in the consulship of Messala and Piso' (B.C. 61). The Romans dated by the names of the two consuls of the year.

4. **nobilitatis, civitati:** collectively for *nobilium, civibus,* so a plural verb *exirent* is used.

4, 5. **persuasit ut . . . exirent: perfacile esse.** Note the construction of verbs of persuading: 'I persuade you *to go,*' *persuadeo tibi ut eas*; 'I persuade him *that you are going,*' *persuadeo ei te ire.* There is no need therefore to supply any verb of saying before *perfacile,* the clause being directly dependent on *persuasit.*

6. **cum virtute omnibus praestarent:** causal subjunctive; *virtute,* abl. of respect; *omnibus,* dat. after *praesto,* 'to excel.' With the acc. *praesto* means 'to display.'

7. **hoc facilius,** 'by so much the more easily,' &c.; abl. of measure of difference.

8. **loci natura,** 'the character of their country.'

12. **tertia:** sc. *ex parte.*

14. **his rebus fiebat ut,** &c., 'the consequence of this was that their wanderings were restricted and they found it less easy . . . .'

15, 16. **qua ex parte,** 'on which side': i. e. 'and in this respect.'

17. **pro multitudine,** 'considering their numbers,' or 'in proportion to,' closely with *angustos*.

19, 20. **qui . . . patebant,** 'these in fact only did extend.' The indicative shows that the words are Caesar's, in explanation, not part of the complaint of the Helvetii, or the subjunctive would have been used.

III.

1. **rebus,** 'reasons,' 'considerations.'

3. **pertinerent:** subjunctive, because in virtual Oratio Obliqua, 'which were (they thought) necessary for making a start'; or it may be consecutive, 'such things as were necessary.'

4, 5. **quam maximas:** see note on chap. vii. l. 2.

7. **res,** 'preparations.'

8. **duxerunt,** 'they thought.'

in tertium annum, '*for* the third year,' i.e. 'two years later.'

13. **obtinuerat,** 'had held'; see note on chap. i. l. 17.

14. **amicus.** The title of 'friend' did not necessarily imply a formal alliance, only an obligation to further the interests of Rome in return for her protection in case of need.

14, 15. **ut . . . occuparet:** with *persuadet*, 'persuaded to seize'; *persuadet* is an historic present, and so takes the sequence of a past tense.

14. **sua.** Where no ambiguity arises *suus* may refer to the subject of the dependent, not of the principal, clause.

19. **factu:** lit. 'in the doing'; abl. of respect. The supine in *-u* is used after *fas*, *nefas* and certain adjectives, especially those in *-ilis* and *-bilis*.

21. **obtenturus esset,** 'was going to hold'; he said *obtenturus sum*.

22. **plurimum:** adverbial acc. of extent. *Galliae*, partitive genitive after *plurimum*.

23. **regna,** 'royal power.'

25. **regno occupato:** conditional abl. abs., 'if they seized supreme power.'

26. **per tres . . . populos:** with *potiri posse*. *Populus* is '*a* people,' 'nation,' not 'people'; 'people say' is *sunt qui dicant*; 'many people are here,' *multi* (*homines*) *adsunt*. The three referred to are the Aedui, Sequani, and Helvetii.

27. **Galliae.** Elsewhere in Caesar *potior* governs an ablative.

27. **posse.** Verbs of hoping, expecting, &c., take the future infinitive, for which *posse* has here to do duty, *possum* having no future infinitive.

IV.

1. **res,** 'state of things,' 'conspiracy.'

per indicium, 'by means of informers': collective like *nobilitas* in chap. ii. l. 4.

2. **ex vinculis,** '*in* chains'; cp. *ex equo*, 'on horseback.'

3, 4. **damnatum . . . cremaretur,** 'if he were condemned, the law required (*oportebat*) that the punishment of being burned alive should follow'; lit. 'it was necessary that the punishment, viz. that he should be burned, should follow him (if) condemned.' *Damnatum* is conditional and *ut . . . cremaretur* is explanatory of *poenam*; cp. chap. v. l. 2 *quod constituerant . . . ut . . . exeant.*

4. **die constituta,** 'on the day fixed for the trial'; abl. of point of time. See note on chap. vi. l. 16.

5. **familiam,** 'household'; including servants and slaves as well as children.

8, 9. **ne . . . diceret,** 'to avoid standing his trial'; *per eos*, 'by means of these,' since they overawed the judges by their numbers.

V.

1. **nihilo:** abl. of measure of difference, like *hoc facilius* in chap. ii. l. 7.

2, 3. **ut . . . exeant:** viz. 'to go forth.' Explanatory clause to *id facere*; cp. *ut . . . cremaretur*, chap. iv. l. 3.

3. **rem,** 'attempt,' 'undertaking.'

5, **reliqua,** 'as well as all their . . . .'

7. **domum:** acc. of motion to, depending on the verbal sense of *reditionis* = *redeundi.*

9. **mensum:** genitive of description or measure, 'three months' flour' or 'meal'; lit. 'ground food-material.' *Mensis* has gen. pl. either in *-um* or *-ium*, like *apis*, 'a bee,' *apium* or *apum*. Distinguish *mŏlĭta* (*molo*) from *mōlīta* (*molior*, 'I exert myself'); and just below, *ŭti* (= *ut*) from *ūtī*, 'to use.'

13. **unā cum eis,** 'along with them.' Strictly speaking, *eis* should be *se* as the reference is to the subject *Helvetii*, but Caesar is not nearly so particular in his use of the reflexive as our grammars might lead us to suppose; cp. chaps. vi. l. 15, xi. l. 8, xiv. l. 10.

15, 16. **receptos . . . adsciscunt,** 'welcome and attach as allies.'

VI.

1. **itinera . . . quibus itineribus.** This repetition of the antecedent is common in Caesar; cf. *diem . . . qua die* near the end of this chapter.

2. **possent:** consecutive subj., 'such that they could'; so *ducerentur* just below.

4. **vix:** put first for emphasis; cp. chap. xxv. l. 13 *multi ut praeoptarent.* Translate after *singuli*, 'only one at a time and that with difficulty.'

5. **ut** = *ita ut*, 'so that.'

6. **multo:** see on chap. v. l. 1.

8. **nuper:** in B.C. 61 by the praetor C. Pomptinus.

9. **vado transītur,** 'is fordable'; *vădo*, abl. of instrument. Distinguish *vādo*, 'I go,' *vădo*, 'with a ford.'

10. **extremum:** i.e. 'furthest north.'

13. **bono animo:** abl. of quality; like the gen. of quality always used with an epithet or its equivalent. 'A bold man' may be either *vir audax* or *vir summā audaciā* or *summae audaciae*, not *vir audacia* or *-ae* alone.

14. **viderentur:** subjunctive because in virtual Oratio Obliqua, expressing the thought of the Helvetii.

15. **ut . . . paterentur.** *Cogo* takes both infinitive (as in chap. iv. l. 2) and *ut* with subjunctive.

suos . . . eos: see note on chap. v. l. 13.

16. **diem dicunt,** 'fix a date.' *Dies* in the sense of 'set day,' 'date,' is feminine, of a natural day, masculine; in the plural, masculine always. For *diem qua die* see on chap. vi. l. 1.

17. **conveniant,** 'are to assemble'; either final or jussive subj.

18. **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.:** i.e. *ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles*, March 28, B.C. 58. 'Caesar clearly regards the day as a kind of landmark by this precise marking, so rare in his writings' (Walpole).

VII.

1, 2. **Caesari cum . . . maturat.** The more usual order would be *Caesar, cum ei nuntiatum esset, maturat.*

eos . . . conari: explanatory of *id.*

2. **ab urbe,** 'from the neighbourhood of'; a proconsul or propraetor with *imperium*, i.e. the absolute control of an army in the field, was not allowed *within* the city.

3. **quam maximis potest,** 'the longest possible'; in full, *tam maximis quam potest.*

4. **ulteriorem:** or Transalpine, as opposed to *citerior* or Cisalpine Gaul.

ad, 'to the neighbourhood,' 'as far as'; 'to' would be simply *Genavam.* In l. 7 *ad Genavam* means '*at* Geneva.'

5. **provinciae toti:** *impero,* besides the dative of the person, may take the accusative of the thing ordered. Tr., 'orders to furnish.'

7. **legio una,** 'the tenth,' his favourite legion; see end of chap. xl.

9. **legatos,** '*as* envoys.'

11. **principem locum obtinebant,** 'were at the head.'

qui dicerent, 'to say,' final subjunctive; imperfect because *mittit* is a historic present. See note on *occuparet,* chap. iii. l. 14, and on chap. xi. l. 5.

13. **nullum:** emphatic by position, 'other route they had none.' Cp. chap. xviii. l. 12.

14. **rogare.** Supply *se* from *sibi.*

liceat. Caesar very often uses the present and the perfect subjunctive for the imperfect and the pluperfect in Oratio Obliqua to make the narrative more vivid; sometimes, as here and in chap. xxxi, he mixes the two.

15. **Cassium . . . occisum.** In B.C. 107 by the Tigurini, one of the tribes of the Helvetii who joined the Cimbri and Teutones in their invasion.

16. **sub iugum.** The 'yoke' consisted of two spears stuck upright in the ground with a third laid across them; the beaten army had to pass under this in token of submission.

17. **concedendum:** sc. *id quod rogabant.* Tr., 'that leave ought to be given.'

18. **inimico animo:** see note on *bono animo,* chap. vi. l. 13.

data facultate: conditional abl. abs., 'if permission were granted'; cp. *damnatum,* chap. iv. l. 3.

19. **faciundi:** another form of the gerund and gerundive in the third and fourth conjugations.

20, 21. **dum . . . convenirent,** 'till the soldiers should assemble.' *dum* with the subjunctive expresses purpose as here, or means 'provided that,' as *oderint dum metuant,* 'let them hate provided that they fear.'

22. **diem,** 'time.'

23. **reverterentur:** dependent jussive. His words were *si vultis . . . revertimini ad Idus,* 'by the Ides': i.e. the thirteenth.

VIII.

1. **ea legione,** 'with the legion'; troops are regarded as instruments, and so with *exercitus, milites* and such words the instrumental ablative is used instead of the abl. of the agent with *a* or *ab*.

5, 6. **murum . . . fossam.** The wall and ditch were not of course continuous, only at points where the mountains on the left or south side of the river did not make the bank precipitous.

7. **quo** = *ut eo*: lit. 'in order that by that much'; abl. of measure of difference. *Quo* is used for *ut* in final clauses containing a comparative.

9. **dies:** for the gender see note on chap. vi. l. 16.

10, 11. **negat se . . . posse,** 'he says he cannot.'

10. **more et exemplo,** 'in accordance with practice and precedent': abl. of manner.

12. **prohibiturum:** sc. *se*.

13. **ea spe deiecti,** 'foiled in (lit. from) this hope'; abl. of separation.

14. **alii,** 'others also by the fords.' Caesar seems to imply that the majority tried to cross by the bridge of boats.

16. **si . . . possent conati,** 'having tried if they could break through.' *Si* for *num*, 'whether,' is used chiefly after verbs and sentences implying trial, e.g. *temptata res est si capi Ardea posset*, 'an attempt was made to see if Ardea could be taken.'

16. **operis munitione,** 'by the rampart' or 'embankment'; lit. 'by the fortification of (i.e. consisting of) the work,' *operis* being a sort of defining genitive.

IX.

1. **una . . . via,** 'only one way, that through the Sequani.'

1, 2. **Sequanis invitis:** conditional abl. abs. 'if the Sequani were unwilling'; cp. chap. iv. l. 3 *damnatum*.

3. **sua sponte** = *per se*, 'themselves,' by their own unaided efforts.

4. **eo deprecatore,** 'through his intercession'; abl. abs. lit. 'he being intercessor.'

5. **impetrarent:** imperfect after the historic present *mittunt*; see note on *occuparet*, chap. iii. l. 14.

6. **plurimum:** see note on chap. iii. l. 22.

9. **novis rebus,** 'revolution'; cp. *novae tabulae,* 'a cancelling of debts,' lit. 'fresh account-books.'

10. **rem,** 'the mission,' 'negotiations.'

13, 14. **Sequani . . . Helvetii:** supply some words like 'pledging themselves' from *dent obsides.*

X.

6, 8. **ut . . . haberet:** explanatory clause, 'to have'; cp. chap. v. l. 2 *ut exeant.* The subject to *haberet* is *provincia.*

9. **Italiam:** i. e. Cisalpine Gaul.

10. **magnis itineribus,** 'forced marches'; an ordinary day's march was *iustum iter.* See Introd. p. 18.

12. **qua proximum iter . . . erat,** 'by the shortest route.'

16, 17. **compluribus his . . . pulsis:** the order is *his pulsis,* 'having beaten them,' *compluribus proeliis,* 'in several battles.'

17, 18. **quod . . . extremum,** 'the border town.'

17. **citerioris:** Gallia Cisalpina; *ulterioris,* 'the Province'; the case of the latter is possessive or containing genitive, as in the Greek *αἱ Θῆβαι τῆς Βοιωτίας,* 'Thebes in Boeotia.'

XI.

5. **rogatum:** 'to ask for.' Note the various ways of translating such a sentence as 'He sent envoys to sue for peace':

(1) *legatos misit qui pacem peterent;* }
(2) ,, ,, *ut pacem peterent;* }
(3) ,, ,, *pacem petitum;*
(4) ,, ,, *pacis petendae causa;* }
(5) ,, ,, *ad pacem petendam;* }
(6) ,, ,, *pacem petituros.*

(3) only after a verb of motion; (6) rare in prose; the plain infinitive *petere never.*

6. **omni tempore:** abl. of time within which.

7. **nostri:** Caesar often uses *noster* even in Orat. Obl. in the sense of *Romanus.*

8. **eorum:** should strictly be *sui,* referring back to *se*; but see note on chap. v. l. 13.

11. **depopulatis:** deponent used passively, like many deponent participles.

15. **nihil . . . reliqui,** 'nothing left,' partitive genitive.

16. **quibus rebus,** 'by these facts,' 'considerations.'

17, 18. **dum . . . pervenirent:** see note on chap. vii. l. 20.

XII.

1. **flumen est Arar,** 'there is a river, the Arar.'

2. **incredibili lenitate:** abl. of quality; see note on chap. vi. l. 13.

3. **in utram partem,** 'in which direction.'

5. **transibant:** note the tense.

8. **Ararim:** the acc. in *-im* is regularly used with names of towns and rivers in *-is*, as *Tiberim*, *Neapolim*.

de tertia vigilia, 'starting from' and so 'in the course of the third watch'; the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four watches of equal length; so the third watch would begin at midnight.

13. **in proximas silvas abdiderunt:** the pregnant use of the preposition: 'they went *to* the woods and hid *in* them.' Supply *se* with *abdiderunt*.

14. **Tigurinus:** we should say 'the Tigurīni.'

16. **patrum . . . memoria,** 'within the memory of our fathers'; *patrum* is used literally, not in the sense of forefathers; *memoria*, abl. of time within which.

17, 18. **sub iugum:** see note on chap. vii. l. 16.

20, 21. **princeps . . . persolvit,** 'was the first to pay.'

23. **soceri:** Caesar married in B. C. 59, as his third wife, Calpurnia, daughter of L. Calpurnius Piso.

XIII.

1, 2. **ut . . . posset:** again an imperfect subj. dependent on a historic present; cp. chap. iii. l. 14.

2. **curat:** besides the gerundive, *curo* may be followed by the infinitive, or *ut* and the subjunctive.

in Arare, 'over the Arar.'

4. **diebus:** for the case see note on *memoria*, chap. xii. l. 16.

5. **ut . . . transirent:** viz. the crossing of the river; explanatory clause like *ut exeant* chap. v. l. 2.

8. **Cassiano:** the war in which Cassius was killed, B.C. 107, mentioned in the last chapter.

10, 11. **faceret . . . ituros . . . constituisset:** Orat. Obl. for original *faciet . . . ibimus . . . constitueris* (fut. perf.).

12. **reminisceretur:** representing original imperative *reminiscere*; cp. *committeret*, l. 20.

13. **incommodi,** 'mishap,' a euphemism for *calamitatis*.

populi Romani, '*to* the Roman people,' objective genitive.

14, 15. **quod . . . esset,** 'as for his having attacked.'

17. **suae:** for *tuae*, 'your own,' in Oratio Recta.

tribueret: the object seems to be the clause *quod . . . esset.* Mr. Shuckburgh translates: 'just because you have attacked . . . don't on that account put it down very much to the credit of your valour or think lightly of us' (Pitt Press edition, p. 39).

18. **ipsos:** for *nos*, 'us,' contrasted with *suae* just before.

21. **constitissent:** for original *constitistis*, 'you have taken your stand.'

XIV.

1. **his:** sc. *legatis*. 'To these words' would be *ad haec*, as in chap. xxxvi. l. 1.

eo: abl. of measure of difference; *dubitationis*, partitive genitive, 'he felt the less hesitation because . . .'

3, 4. **eo gravius . . . quo minus:** *eo* and *quo*, abl. of measure, balance each other; lit. 'he was by that much more indignant by which it had happened less deservedly'; trans. 'he felt the more indignant inasmuch as it had happened through no fault,' &c.

5. **qui si,** 'for if the latter had been conscious of having done some wrong . . . .'

6. **fuisse** represents an original *fuit*, not *fuisset*, which would have become *futurum fuisse*. *Difficile fuit* = 'it had been (i.e. would have been) difficult'; cp. *longum est*, 'it were tedious,' and the use of *debeo, possum, oportet*, &c. as *in ad mortem te duci oportebat*, 'you ought to have been led to execution,' where Latin expresses a *fact*, English the *failure to realize* the fact. See Gildersleeve's *Lat. Gr.* § 254.

eo . . . quod, 'by the fact that it was unaware of anything having been done by reason of which it need fear.'

7. **quare** = *propter quod.*

9. **vellet:** sc. Caesar. His original words were *si vellem*, 'even if I were willing (which I am not).'

9, 12. **num . . . posse?** 'could he?' Rhetorical questions, i.e. questions asked for the sake of effect, not requiring an answer, are usually treated in Oratio Obliqua as statements, and put into the infinitive instead of the subjunctive like real questions.

10, 11. **quod . . . tentassent,** 'in that they had attempted.'

10. **eo invito:** see note on *cum eis*, chap. v. l. 13.

11. **quod . . . quod . . . quod.** This rhetorical device of repeating the same word in each clause is called Anaphora.

13. **quod . . . gloriarentur,** 'as to' or 'the fact of their boasting.'

14. **impune . . . tulisse.** It seems best not to take this as equal to *iniurias intulisse*, 'to have inflicted injuries,' but to take *impune tulisse* together in the sense of 'to have got off unpunished . . . for' their acts of wrong-doing.

15. **consuesse:** contracted for *consuevisse*. From here the tenses of the reported speech are primary, as though dependent on a primary tense.

16. **quo gravius:** see note on chap. viii. l. 7.

rerum, 'of fortune.'

19. **cum . . . sint:** concessive, 'although this was so.' Look out in the grammar the various ways of expressing a concessive clause in Latin.

XV.

4. **coactum habebat,** 'he had, having collected them.' The participial phrase denotes that the result of the action continues; cp. *redempta habere*, chap. xviii. l. 11.

4, 5. **qui videant,** 'to see'; final subjunctive; *faciant*, dependent question.

6. **cupidius,** 'too eagerly.'

novissimum agmen, 'the rear'; *novus* denoting 'absolutely new' has no comparative; the superlative means 'last.'

9. **equitibus:** see note on chap. viii. l. 1.

13. **satis habebat:** see Vocabulary, *satis*.

16. **primum:** sc. *agmen*.

17. **quinis aut senis.** The distributives denote the distance on each day.

XVI.

1. **Aeduos frumentum.** Verbs of asking, teaching, and concealing take a double accusative.

2. **essent,** 'they had (he said) promised': virtual Oratio Obliqua; cp. *viderentur*, chap. vi. l. 14.

flagitare, 'kept demanding'; the historic infinitive, like *ducere* and *dicere*, just below. It is chiefly used in expressing a rapid sequence of events, with the subject in the nominative.

3. **frigora,** 'cold seasons'; so plural.

7. **flumine:** abl. of route.

8. **iter . . . averterant:** they were now marching north-west towards Bibracte.

9. **diem ex die,** 'from day to day'; adverbial phrase.

10. **ducere . . . dicere,** 'kept putting him off,' 'kept saying.' For the infinitive see on *flagitare*, just above. Supply *Caesarem* as the object to *ducere*, and *frumentum* as the subject to *conferri.*

11. **diutius,** 'too long.'

11, 12. **diem . . . quo die:** see note on chap. vi. l. 1.

12. **metiri.** The soldiers received a monthly allowance of corn.

17. **in suos,** 'over his people.'

18. **emi:** sc. *frumentum.*

19. **tam propinquis hostibus,** 'with the enemy so near'; abl. of attendant circumstances.

22. **quod sit,** 'of having been . . .'

XVII.

3. **plurimum:** adverbial acc. of extent; so *plus.*

7. **praestare,** 'declaring it was better.' This was the argument of the *nonnullos* referred to above. The same are the subject of *dubitare* just below.

7. **iam,** 'any longer.'

10. **Aeduis,** 'from the Aedui': dative of disadvantage.

11. **nostra:** i.e. those of the Romans. Caesar frequently uses *nos, noster* in Oratio Obliqua when referring to the Romans.

13. **quin etiam,** 'nay more, as to his having divulged to Caesar an urgent matter, he was aware what a risk he ran in doing so'; lit. 'with what danger he had done that.' For *necessariam rem* Kraner reads *necessaria re* = *necessitate*, and construes with *coactus.*

XVIII.

2. **pluribus,** 'too many.'

4, 6. **ex solo . . . quaerit,** 'when he gets him alone he asks him about.'

6. **audacius:** sc. 'than before,' when there was a large audience.

7. **ipsum,** 'that it was just Dumnorix,' or 'indeed Dumnorix.'

summa audacia, 'a man of the utmost audacity': abl. of quality. For the omission of the usual *vir* or *homo* in apposition cp. *De Bello Gallico,* ii. 6 *Iccius Remus, summa nobilitate.*

9. **rerum novarum:** objective genitive. See note on chap. ix. l. 9.

10. **portoria**, 'customs duties' on imports and exports.

vectigalia, 'taxes' generally, due to the State.

11. **redempta habere**, 'had purchased and held,' more than *redemerat*; see note on chap. xv. l. 4 *coactum habebat*. He had paid a certain sum to the State for which he obtained the right of collecting the taxes, making what profit he could out of the transaction.

11, 12. **illo licente**, 'when he bid.' The contract for collecting the taxes was sold by auction to the highest bidder.

12. **nemo**, 'not a soul'; emphatic by position; cp. chap. vii. l. 13.

13. **auxisse**: transitive, 'to increase'; intrans. is *crescere* or *augeri*.

16. **domi**: i. e. in his own state.

17. **huius . . . causa**, 'to secure this power.'

20, 21. **nuptum . . . collocasse**, 'had given in marriage'; *nuptum* is the supine.

24. **eius** refers to Dumnorix; see note on chap. v. l. 13.

26. **si quid accidat**, 'should anything happen'; i. e. anything disastrous. We have the same euphemism in English.

27. **imperio**, 'under the rule'; abl. of attendant circumstances.

30, 31. **quod . . . esset factum**, 'with respect to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish a few days previously'; lit. 'whereas an unsuccessful skirmish had occurred'; cp. chap. xiv. ll. 11, 12.

33. **auxilio**, 'to Caesar's assistance'; dative of purpose.

Caesari: dative of advantage or person interested.

XIX.

2. **certissimae res . . . quod**, 'the undoubted facts were added, viz. that.' *accedo* is regularly used as the passive of *addo*, like *pereo* of *perdo* and *veneo* of *vendo*.

3, 4. **traduxisset . . . curasset**: subjunctive because expressing the reasons as they occurred to Caesar's mind at the time, and so in virtual Oratio Obliqua. For the repetition of *quod* (Anaphora) see note on chap. xiv. l. 11.

5. **suo**, 'Caesar's'; *civitatis*, 'that of the Aedui'; *ipsis*, 'Caesar and the Aedui,' *civibus* being understood from the collective *civitate*.

7. **causae**: partitive genitive.

8. **animadverteret**: dependent question.

14. **conaretur**: *priusquam*, except when referring to definite

events in past time, usually takes the subjunctive, because it implies not only time but in some degree purpose or motive as well. In this case, for instance, he hoped that a warning might make further steps unnecessary.

17, 18. **cui . . . habebat,** 'in whom he had the fullest confidence in every respect.' *Rerum*, objective genitive; *cui*, dative after *fidem habere = confidere.*

19. **ipso:** Divitiacus.

21. **apud se:** Caesar.

22, 23. **sine eius offensione animi,** 'that, without hurting his (Divitiacus') feelings, he (Caesar) may either himself, after investigating the case, pass sentence, or (if Divitiacus preferred it, *vel*) bid the State pass sentence on him.'

23. **animi:** objective genitive.

XX.

2, 3. **ne quid . . . statueret,** 'not to pass too harsh a sentence.'

3. **scire.** Supply *dixit* from *obsecrare.* In the following words to *commoveri*, *se*, *ipse*, *suam* refer to Divitiacus, *ille* to Dumnorix.

nec quemquam. Note that for 'and no one,' 'and never,' 'and none,' &c., Latin uses *nec quisquam, nec unquam, nec ullus*, not *et nemo, et nunquam, et nullus.*

5, 6. **plurimum, minimum:** for the case see note on chap. iii. l. 22.

7. **quibus opibus ac nervis,** 'and the resources and power thus gained.' For *nervis* in this sense cp. our phrase 'the sinews of war.'

10, 14. **quod si . . . averterentur.** His words were: *Si quid ei . . . acciderit* (fut. perf.) *cum ego hunc locum . . . apud te teneam, nemo existimabit (id) non mea voluntate factum esse; qua ex re fiet ut . . . a me avertantur.*

10, 11. **si quid . . . accidisset:** see above note on chap. xviii. l. 26.

15. **pluribus verbis,** 'at greater length.'

16, 17. **rogat . . . faciat,** 'begs him to make'; dependent jussive.

17. **tanti . . . apud se,** 'of such value in his (Caesar's) eyes'; locative (also called genitive) of price. Verbs of valuing and buying take the genitive of the general value or cost, the ablative of the particular value or cost; e.g. *Quanti habitas? Sex minis*; 'What's your rent? Six minae.'

18. **rei publicae,** '*to* the State'; objective genitive. Caesar's

words were: 'In view of your goodwill I forgive him, both for the wrong he has done the State and the vexation he has caused me.'

20, 21. **quae . . . reprehendat**, 'what faults he has to find with him.' *Quae* from *quis*, dependent question; so *agat, loquatur*. For *quae . . . quae . . . quae*: see on chap. xix. l. 3.

23. **suspiciones**, 'causes of suspicion.'

24. **Divitiaco**, 'for Divitiacus' sake he forgives'; lit. 'he makes a present to Divitiacus of.'

XXI.

2, 3. **milia . . . octo**: acc. of extent. So in chap. xxii. l. 17; but in chap. xlviii. l. 2 the abl. is used.

4. **qui cognoscerent misit**: 'sent (men) to ascertain'; final subjunctive.

3, 4. **qualis . . . ascensus**, 'what sort of ascent there was by going round' and taking the enemy in the rear; or perhaps 'the chance of ascending it on its various sides' (Moberley).

5. **de tertia vigilia**: see note on chap. xii. l. 8.

6. **pro praetore**, 'of praetorian rank.' See Introduction, p. 11. 'Sometimes though a man had not been praetor, the Senate gave him the honorary rank when serving as a *legatus*' (Mr. Shuckburgh's note, Pitt Press edition).

7. **eis ducibus qui**, 'with the men, who had reconnoitred, for guides.'

8. **quid sui consilii sit**, 'what his plan is,' lit. 'what belongs to his plan'; partitive genitive.

13. **in M. Crassi**, 'in that of Crassus.' Note 'my books and those of my brother,' *mei* (adj.) *libri fratrisque*, not *et ei fratris*. Caesar seems to mention Considius' special qualifications to show that he himself could not have expected the man would lose his head in the way he describes in chap. xxii.

XXII.

1, 2. **summus mons . . . teneretur**, 'the top of the mountain was being occupied.' When used partitively (as here), *summus, medius*, and such words usually precede the noun; e.g. *mons summus*, 'the highest mountain,' *summus mons*, 'the top of the mountain.'

7. **voluerit**: Oratio Obliqua for original *voluisti*.

11. **ipsius**: Caesar's.

17. **quod non . . . viso,** 'had reported as seen what he had not seen,' but only imagined.

18. **quo . . . intervallo** = *eo intervallo quo sequi consuerat,* 'at the usual interval,' of five or six miles; see the end of chap. xv.

XXIII.

1. **postridie eius diei:** lit. 'on the morrow of that day,' possessive genitive. The phrase is very like English, 'the morrow morn'; Scots, 'the morn's morn.' With *postridie* and *pridie* the accusative is regularly used (*pridie Kalendas Februarias,* Jan. 31st), except with *eius diei,* as here.

2. **cum . . . oporteret,** 'to the time when it was needful'; see note on chap. xvi. l. 12.

5. **prospiciendum,** 'that provision must be made for.'

7. **decurionis:** see Introduction, p. 10.

8, 9. **quod . . . existimarent:** subjunctive by a sort of attraction. The sentence is really equivalent to *quod Romani (ut existimabant) discederent,* the latter verb, like *commisissent* just below, being subjunctive because expressing the thought of the Helvetii. Cp. *litteras, quas me sibi misisse diceret, recitavit,* where *misisse diceret* really stands for *misisset* or *miserat, ut dixit.*

10. **eo:** see on chap. xiv. l. 3.

12. **posse:** sc. *Romanos.*

13, 14. **a novissimo agmine,** '*on* the rear.'

XXIV.

1. **postquam . . . animum advertit:** perfect tense; tr. 'after he *had* observed': *postquam* usually takes the pluperfect only when a definite interval is mentioned, as *post tertium annum quam venerat,* 'four years after he had come.'

2, 3. **qui sustineret** = final, 'to sustain'; cp. chap. xxi. l. 4.

4. **in colle medio,** 'halfway up the hill.'

4, 10, 15. **triplicem aciem, sarcinas, impedimenta:** see Introduction.

12, 13. **ab his qui . . . constiterant,** 'by the two legions who had been posted in line higher up'; *hic* is definite, and not, like *is,* a pronoun of mere reference.

18. **phalange facta:** by phalanx is meant a compact mass of infantry. See illustration, p. 55.

XXV.

1. **suo**: sc. *equo*.

2. **omnium**: i. e. of the mounted officers.

9. **Gallis**: dat. of disadvantage.

10. **impedimento**: predicative dative.

10, 12. **quod pluribus . . . inflexisset,** 'that several . . . were pinned together . . . , and then the iron head having got bent,' &c.

13, 14. **multi ut,** 'so that in many cases'; for the emphatic position of *multi* cp. chap. vi. l. 4.

15. **nudo corpore,** 'with the body unprotected'; abl. of manner.

16, 17. **mons . . . passuum,** 'there was a mountain near, a mile away, or thereabouts.'

17. **mille**: here used as a substantive with the partitive genitive, instead of as an adjective; adverbial acc. of extent.

20. **novissimis praesidio**: for the datives see on *Gallis* above in this chapter, l. 9.

21. **ex itinere,** 'while on the march,' lit. '(turning aside) from the march.'

latere aperto, 'on the exposed flank,' i.e. the right, the left being protected by the shield.

circumvenire with *coeperunt*.

24, 25. **conversa signa . . . intulerunt,** 'wheeled and advanced in two divisions'; lit. 'brought on their wheeled standards': see Introduction, pp. 21, 22. This manœuvre would be performed by the third line, the other two being at right angles to it and keeping in check the Helvetii, who had been driven back, but were returning to the attack.

XXVI.

1. **ancipiti . . . pugnatum,** 'there was a furious battle along two fronts.'

2. **diutius cum**: for the emphatic position of *diutius* cp. *vix ut*, chap. vi. l. 4, and *multi ut*, chap. xxv. l. 10, and *diu cum* just below.

3. **alteri**: the Helvetii; *alteri*, the Boii and Tulingi. See *alter* in Vocabulary. *Nam*, '(retired, not fled) for . . .'

5, 6. **cum . . . pugnatum sit**: concessive, 'though the fight lasted from the seventh hour,' about one o'clock. The Roman day was divided into twelve hours, from sunrise to sunset, the length of the hours varying with the time of year.

7, 8. **ad impedimenta,** 'beside the baggage.'

8, 9. **pro vallo,** 'to serve as a rampart.'

9. **loco superiore,** 'vantage-ground.'

14. **captus est:** agreeing with the nearer subject; sc. *capta est* with *filia*; cp. *iniectum* at end of chap. xlvi.

16. **ea . . . nocte:** abl. of time within which; *nullam partem*, acc. of duration of time. Tr. 'though they did not interrupt their march for any part of the night, yet it was not till the fourth day afterwards that they reached,' &c.; *three* days we should say, but the Romans reckoned inclusively.

21, 22. **ne . . . iuvarent,** 'telling them not to help,' jussive in Oratio Obliqua, the command being implied in *litteras nuntiosque*, which ran *ne iuveritis*; *si iuveritis* (fut. pf.), *vos habebo*, &c.

22. **neve . . . iuvarent:** *neve* is used instead of *neque* in final and jussive clauses.

XXVII.

4, 6. **atque . . . iussisset:** i. e. *atque cum Caesar iussisset*; the change of subject is abrupt.

7, 8. **qui . . . perfugissent:** subj. because part of Caesar's demand, 'who, as he said, had fled,' and also because indefinite = 'all such as had fled.'

8. **ea,** 'these,' though neuter, agreeing with *arma*, referring to *obsides* and *servos* also.

11. **perterriti:** with *milia* the adjective or participle usually follows the sense rather than the form of the word (*constructio ad sensum*); so *egressi*.

14. **existimarent:** subjunctive, because reporting their thoughts.

15. **ad Rhenum,** 'in the direction of the Rhine.'

XXVIII.

2. **his:** antecedent to *quorum*, 'these people,' the Germans; see note on chap. xxiv. l. 9.

sibi purgati, 'free of blame in his eyes,' dative of person judging; cp. *Quintia formosa est multis*, 'Quintia is a beauty in the eyes of many.'

3, 4. **hostium . . . habuit:** a euphemism for 'he had them put to death.'

7. **omnibus frugibus:** see chap. v. line 6 *frumentum omne . . . comburunt.*

8. **quo . . . tolerarent,** 'nothing wherewith to stave off hunger,' final subj.; *quo* = *ut eo.*

9. **ipsos** = the Helvetii.

16. **Boios:** acc. after *collocarent*, depending on *petentibus*, which is either abl. abs. or dative after *concessit.* Tr. 'As for the Boii, he granted the request of the Aedui that they might settle them . . . because they had been proved to be men of remarkable bravery.'

16, 17. **egregia virtute:** abl. of quality with epithet.

19, 20. **parem iuris . . . erant,** 'admitted to the same terms of rights . . . as they had themselves.' Adjectives and adverbs of likeness and unlikeness regularly take *atque* or *ac*, as *aliter atque ego sentis*, 'your views differ from mine.'

XXIX.

1, 2. **tabulae . . . confectae,** 'list drawn up in Greek characters,' of which they would learn the use from the Greek colonists at Massilia. See *tabula*, *castrum*, and *littera* in the Vocabulary; and for the repetition of the antecedent, *quibus itineribus*, cp. chap. vi. l. 1.

3. **nominatim,** 'under the several heads' (Long).

4, 5. **qui . . . possent,** 'such as could,' consecutive.

6. **quarum . . . rerum . . . capitum,** 'of these divisions the sum-total came to . . . thousand souls.'

10. **summa . . . fuerunt:** contrast with *summa erat* just above; the imperfect refers to the time during which the lists were being made out, *fuerunt* to the result of the counting; the plural *fuerunt* is due to attraction to *milia* in the predicate, which is nominative, *ad* being adverbial.

XXX.

1. **Helvetiorum:** subjective genitive, *populi Romani* objective; 'the wrongs inflicted by the Helvetii *on* the Romans.'

Galliae: in apposition to, not governed by, *terrae*: cp. *urbs Roma.*

7. **florentissimis rebus:** concessive abl. abs., 'though they were enjoying the greatest prosperity,' and so had no need to seek fresh lands.

eo consilio . . . uti, 'simply with the design of . . .'

9. **domicilio:** dative of purpose; *ex . . . copia*, sc. *locorum*, 'choice of places.'

17. **concilio:** dative of purpose.

18. **enuntiaret,** 'to divulge' what passed at the meeting. For *ne quis* see note on chap. xx. l. 3.

18, 19. **nisi quibus . . . mandatum esset,** 'except those to whom instructions had been given.'

XXXI.

4. **ea re impetrata,** 'permission being granted.'

5. **Caesari ad pedes,** 'at Caesar's feet,' dative of reference or person interested.

6, 9. **contendere . . . viderent:** the verbs they used were *contendimus . . . dixerimus* (fut. pf.) *enuntientur . . . volumus, impetremus . . . erit . . . videmus.*

11, 12. **harum . . . hi** are use graphically for *ei, earum*, on the same principle by which Caesar so often uses the present and perfect subjunctive in Oratio Obliqua even after a past tense.

13. **contenderent,** 'had been struggling'; Divitiacus said *multos* (*iam*) *annos contendunt.*

17. **copias,** 'riches.'

24. **qui:** sc. *eos.* Their words were *nos, qui potuimus, nunc coacti sumus,* or perhaps *potuerimus,* concessive, 'though we have been very powerful.'

27. **obsides,** 'as hostages.'

30, 31. **recusaturos quo minus . . . essent,** 'refuse to be.' Besides the *quo minus* construction, *recuso* may be followed by the infinitive, or by *ne* and subjunctive.

35. **Romam ad senatum,** '*to* the senate *at* Rome'; note the order of words: 'I am going *to* my brother *at* Athens,' *Athenas ad fratrem eo.*

41. **altera parte tertia,** 'another third.' Mr. Brown, in his edition of this book, points out that this territory, the modern Alsace, has been again and again, and is even at the present day, a bone of contention between the French and the Germans.

42, 43. **paucis mensibus ante,** 'a few months before,' abl. of point of time; *ante* is adverbial.

45. **paucis annis:** abl. of time within which.

47. **Gallicum:** sc. *agrum.* He means of course that Gaul was incomparably the better.

48. **hanc:** i.e. *Gallorum*; *illa*, i. e. *Germanorum.*

50. **ut . . . vicerit:** from here to the end of the chapter the tenses are primary as though after *dicunt.* *Ut,* 'when.'

51, 52. **superbe . . . imperare,** 'was issuing arrogant and cruel commands,' 'demanding as hostages . . . and inflicting

on them all sorts of savage tortures'; the two *et*'s, instead of three, show that *poscere* and *edere* are to be taken together, illustrating *imperare*.

53. **exempla cruciatusque:** lit. 'warnings and tortures,' i. e. tortures by way of warning. This use of two nouns joined by a conjunction instead of a noun and an adjective or attributive genitive is called Hendiadys; e. g. *vi et armis*, 'by force of arms.'

54. **si . . . non:** take *non* with *ad nutum*, 'if anything was done not at his nod or his pleasure.'

56. **non posse:** sc. *se*, the Gauls, just as below with *dubitare*.

58. **auxilii:** partitive genitive after *quid*.

59. **ut . . . emigrent:** 'viz. leave'; for the explanatory *ut* clause cp. chap. v. l. 2.

62, 63. **dubitare quin:** supply *se* as subject. Verbs of negative meaning, like *dubito*, 'I doubt,' are regularly followed by *quin*, when they are used negatively or interrogatively; but when *dubito* means 'I hesitate,' it takes in negative clauses the infinitive.

65. **exercitus,** 'that of his army'; see on chap. xxi. l. 13.

XXXII.

2. **magno fletu:** abl. of manner used with *cum* when there is no adjective, except in the case of a few adverbial abl. like *vi*, *iniuria*, *ratione*.

5. **facerent:** subjunctive because a subordinate verb in Oratio Obliqua after *animadvertit*.

tristes, 'gloomily'; when not the manner of the act but the condition of the person is referred to, Latin prefers the adjective to the adverb, as *invitus hoc feci*, 'I did this unwillingly.'

capite demisso: abl. of attendant circumstances or manner.

7, 8. **respondere, permanere:** historic infinitives; see on chap. xvi. l. 2.

10. **hoc:** abl. of measure of difference, 'so much the more pitiable in that . . .'

15, 16. **tamen . . . vero,** 'at least . . . whereas.'

16. **Sequanis:** dative of the agent; in prose only used with the gerund and gerundive, and the perf. part. passive.

XXXIII.

2. **curae,** 'that he would attend to,' predicative dative; cp. *impedimento*, chap. xxv. l. 10.

4, 5. **adductum . . . facturum,** 'would be induced to put an end.'

6. **secundum ea,** 'next to' or 'besides these considerations.'

6, 7. **hortabantur, quare . . . putaret,** 'urged him to think.'

12. **in tanto imperio,** 'considering the greatness of the power of Rome'; cp. *tali tempore*, 'at such a time'; *in tali tempore = cum tale sit tempus.*

14, 16. **Germanos . . . videbat,** 'that the Germans should form the habit . . . he saw was fraught with danger,' &c.

17, 18. **sibi . . . temperaturos . . . quin,** 'would refrain from'; the same word occurs in chap. vii. l. 19 with *sibi* omitted. With the accusative *tempero* means 'to mix.'

22. **Rhodanus,** 'only the Rhone.'

quibus rebus, 'and these dangers,' 'contingencies.'

XXXIV.

2. **qui . . . postularent:** see note on chap. xi. l. 5.

3. **medium utriusque,** 'halfway between the two.'

4. **de re publica . . . rebus,** 'on State affairs and matters of supreme importance to both.' *Uterque*, 'both,' considered separately; *ambo*, 'both,' taken together.

7. **si quid . . . venire:** Ariovistus' words were: *si quid mihi a Caesare opus esset, . . . venissem; si quid me vult, illum ad me . . . oportet.* The constructions of *opus* are: (1) *opus est mihi gladio*, lit. 'there is work for me with a sword'; (2) *opus est mihi gladius*, lit. 'a sword is a need for me.' The second of these is that used here, *quid* being subject, *opus* predicative.

si quid . . . se velit, 'if Caesar wanted anything from him'; double accusative after *volo*, on the analogy of verbs of asking; or *quid* may be an adverbial acc. of extent.

11, 14. **sibi autem . . . esset:** Ariovistus' words were: *mirum mihi videtur quid in mea Gallia quam vici . . . negotii sit. negotii* is partitive genitive after *quid*, 'what business'; cp. chap. xxi. l. 8 *consilii.*

XXXV.

3. **affectus,** 'though he had been treated,' concessive, like *cum appellatus esset*, next line.

4. **consulatu suo:** B.C. 59.

5, 6. **hanc . . . gratiam referret, ut,** 'showed his gratitude thus by objecting to come'; *ut . . . gravaretur* is explanatory to *hanc . . . referret*; cp. chap. v. l. 2.

7, 8. **neque . . . putaret,** 'and by supposing *he* (Ariovistus) had no need to discuss, or make himself acquainted with, a matter of interest to both.'

12, 13. **Sequanisque . . . liceret,** 'and to grant the Sequani permission (*ut . . . liceret*), with his concurrence, to restore to them (the Aedui) those which they (the Sequani) had.'

13. **neve:** see note on chap. xxvi. l. 22.

14. **iniuria,** 'wrongfully,' abl. of manner ; see on chap. xxxii. l. 2.

15. **fecisset:** for original *feceris*, fut. perfect.

17. **si non impetraret:** the subject changes ; 'if he (Caesar) failed to obtain what he asked.' Caesar's words were: *si non impetrabo, quoniam . . . censuit ut, quicunque . . . obtineat, quod . . . possit, . . . defendat, ego . . . non neglegam.*

si non impetraret: with *si non*, the *non* negatives a single word, whereas *nisi* negatives the whole clause.

17, 18. **M. Messala . . . consulibus:** B.C. 61.

19, 20. **quod . . . posset,** 'so far as he could with advantage to the State'; for the restrictive use of the relative (acc. of extent) with the subjunctive cp. *quod sciam*, 'so far as I know,' and the French 'pas que je *sache*.'

21, 22. **se . . . neglecturum:** *se* repeats *sese*, as so many words have come between the subject *sese* and its verb *neglecturum.*

XXXVI.

1, 3. **ius esse . . . imperarent:** Ariovistus says the same thing in different words, chap. xliv.

7. **in suo iure,** 'in the exercise of his rights.'

11, 12. **qui suo . . . faceret:** Ariovistus' words were: *iniuriam facis qui tuo adventu vectigalia mihi deteriora facias.* For the use of *suo sibi* see on chap. iii. l. 14, chap. v. l. 13. *Faceret* is causal subj., 'in that he was damaging.'

13. **neque** = *sed non* ; for *iniuria* see on chap. xxxv. l. 14.

14. **in eo . . . convenisset,** 'held by the agreement, convention.'

15, 16. **si id non fecissent,** 'if they failed to do so'; see on *si non impetraret*, chap. xxxv. l. 17.

16, 17. **longe . . . afuturum,** 'the title of "brothers of the Roman people" would be of little avail,' lit. 'would be far off from them'; *eis* is dative.

17. **quod sibi . . . denuntiaret,** 'as for Caesar's declaration'; sc. *id*, acc. of respect, 'as for that which.' *Sibi* refers to

Ariovistus, *se* to Caesar, *secum* to Ariovistus, *sua* to *neminem* (which alone would be enough to show that Caesar is no more particular in avoiding ambiguity in the use of pronouns than we are).

20. **congrederetur**: jussive, for Oratio Recta *congredere.*

21, 22. **qui . . . subissent**: causal, 'seeing that they had never been under a roof during fourteen years,' i. e. had been constantly in the field.

22. **virtute possent**, 'could do in the way of valour,' abl. of respect.

XXXVII.

1. **eodem tempore . . . et**, 'at the same time . . . as'; *atque* is more usual after *idem*; see on chap. xxviii. l. 19.

4. **eorum**: for original *nostros*; see on chap. v. l. 13.

5. **pacem Ariovisti**, 'peace *from*' or '*with* Ariovistus,' possessive genitive.

6. **Treveri**: sc. *questum.*

12. **resisti**: sc. *ei*, 'for resistance to be made to him.'

14. **magnis itineribus**: abl. of manner; see Introduction, p. 18.

XXXVIII.

3. **quod est oppidum**, 'a town which is'; *quod* instead of agreeing in gender with its antecedent *Vesontionem*, is attracted into that of the predicative noun. This is usually the case when the relative is combined with the copula; e. g. *Thebae quod Boeotiae caput est.*

7. **usui**: predicative dative; see on *impedimento*, chap. xxv. l. 9.

9. **muniebatur**: the imperfect represents the permanent condition of the place.

12. **quod est non amplius pedum**, 'which is (a space of) not more than six hundred feet'; *pedum* is genitive of description or measure. After *plus*, *amplius*, and *minus*, *quam* is often omitted without the construction being affected.

14. **continet**, 'fills up' (the space remaining).

magna altitudine: abl. of quality with epithet.

radices: acc. after *contingant*, of which *ripae* is subject.

16. **arcem efficit**, 'makes into a stronghold.'

XXXIX.

1. **ad Vesontionem,** 'in the neighbourhood of Vesontio.'

2, 3. **ex percontatione . . . vocibusque,** 'as a result of the inquiries of our men and the remarks,' &c.; from *qui* to *potuisse* is an adjectival clause in parenthesis, and the principal sentence begins at *tantus subito.*

4. **magnitudine:** abl. of quality, like the following ablatives.

9, 10. **mentes animosque,** 'reason and courage.'

11. **tribunis militum, praefectis:** see Introduction, pp. 11, 12.

11, 12. **reliquisque . . . secuti:** such men, called *contubernales,* held no definite position or command.

13, 14. **quorum alius . . . illata,** 'these on various pretexts,' lit. 'of whom [one alleging one excuse] another alleging another.'

14, 15. **quam . . . diceret,** 'which, so they said, made it imperative for them to leave.' *Diceret* is subjunctive by attraction to the mood of *esset* in Oratio Obliqua; see note on *existimarent,* chap. xxiii. l. 8.

18. **vultum fingere,** 'assume an expression' (of nonchalance).

24, 25. **centuriones . . . quique . . . praeerant:** see Introduction, pp. 12, 13.

29, 30. **rem frumentariam, ut . . . posset:** lit. 'feared the corn-supply as to how it could be brought up,' an idiom more common in Greek than in Latin. Kraner quotes Cicero, *Fam.* vii. 10 *nôsti Marcellum quam tardus sit.* The *ut* after verbs of fearing really introduces a dependent question.

31, 32. **cum . . . iussisset:** they said *cum iusseris* (fut. pf.).

32. **non . . . audientes,** 'would refuse to obey orders.'

XL.

2. **omnium . . . ordinum,** 'of all the centuries'; see Introduction. As a rule not the whole sixty centurions would be summoned, but only the first centurions of each cohort, ten in all from each legion.

6. **se consule:** only a year before, B.C. 59.

13. **quid tandem,** 'what, pray?' 'what on earth?'
sua refers to the soldiers, *ipsius* to Caesar.

14. **diligentia,** 'the accuracy of his plans.'

15, 18. **cum . . . videbatur,** 'and then it seemed.' Note the indicative retained in Oratio Obliqua, perhaps by a slip on the writer's part.

18, 19. **nuper . . . tumultu:** abl. of point of time. The rising of the slaves under Spartacus lasted from B.C. 73 to B.C. 71; many of these, Caesar implies, were Germans. *Tumultus* was the regular word for an insurrection in Italy.

19. **quos:** the antecedent must be supplied from *servili* = *servorum*. Tr. 'these, however, were assisted in some measure by the training they had got from the Romans.'

21. **quantum** with **boni:** partitive genitive.

27. **qui tamen:** the Helvetii. Note the change to the perfects *superarint*, *potuerint*; see on *liceat*, chap. vii. l. 14.

29. **adversum proelium:** the reverse at Admagetobriga: see chap. xxxi.

33. **neque sui . . . fecisset,** 'without having given them a chance at him.'

35, 38. **cui . . . hac . . . posse,** 'not even Ariovistus himself expected that *our* armies could be taken in by this strategy, though it had answered against,' &c. (lit. 'for which there had been room').

38, 40. **qui . . . conferrent,** 'those who pretended their alarm was due to fears about,' &c. (lit. 'who attributed their fear to the pretence of . . .').

40, 41. **de officio imperatoris,** 'about their general's doing his duty.'

42. **curae:** see on chap. xxxiii. l. 2.

45, 46. **quod . . . dicantur,** 'as to their reported intention not to . . .'

46. **nihil:** adverbial acc. of extent.

47, 48. **quibuscunque . . . defuisse,** 'all generals, whose army had refused to obey them, had either lost their luck through some defeat.'

50. **perpetua vita,** 'by the whole course of his life.'

53. **quarta vigilia:** see on chap. xii. l. 8.

58. **praetoriam cohortem,** 'his body-guard.' *Praetorium* was properly the general's quarters in camp. The praetorian guard was originated by Scipio Africanus as a body-guard to attend the general in the field; it was not a permanent regiment, though it received extra pay. Under the Empire it became a force of 9,000 picked lifeguards for the special protection of the emperor.

XLI.

4. **tribunos militum**: see Introduction, pp. 11, 12.

4, 5. **quod . . . fecisset,** 'because (as they said),' virtual Oratio Obliqua.

7, 8. **primorum ordinum centurionibus**: see Introduction, p. 13.

cum tribunis . . . egerunt, 'pleaded with,' and so 'urged upon.'

10. **suum . . . imperatoris**: predicative, 'belonged not to them, but to the general.'

13–15. **ut . . . duceret**: with *itinere exquisito*; *locis*, abl. of route; *milium . . . quinquaginta*, descriptive genitive; tr., 'that by a roundabout march of more than fifty miles he might lead his army through open country.'

13, 14. **milium amplius quinquaginta**: after *plus, amplius* and *minus, quam* is often omitted without affecting the construction; but the ordinary construction is also used, as *B. G.* iv. 37 *amplius horis quattuor . . . pugnaverunt.*

18. **milibus**: abl. of measure of difference. The acc. of extent or the abl. with *ab* might either of them be used instead of the ablative.

XLII.

3. **per se,** 'so far as he (Ariovistus) was concerned.' His words were: *quod . . . postulavisti, per me fieri licet quoniam . . . accessisti; id me facere posse existimo.*

15. **uterque . . . veniret,** 'let each come,' jussive subjunctive dependent on *postulavit.*

alia ratione, 'on any other terms,' abl. of manner; see on chap. xxxii. l. 2.

19. **Gallis equitibus,** 'from the Gallic cavalry,' dative of the person affected after *detractis,* which is itself abl. absolute. With verbs of taking away, where actual movement is meant, a preposition is required: *vestem homini detraxit,* 'he pulled the man's clothes off'; but *anulum de digito detraxit,* 'he pulled the ring off the finger.'

20. **eo,** 'thereon' = *in eos,* 'on the horses.'

22. **si quid . . . esset,** 'if there should be any need of action'; *quid* is adverbial acc. of extent; *facto,* abl. of the perf. part. pass.; see on chap. xxxiv. l. 7.

23. **non irridicule,** 'wittily.' An instance of Litotes, or

under-statement, as when we say 'not half bad' for 'very good.'

27. **ad equum rescribere,** 'was enrolling among the equites.' The joke lies in the phrase *ad equum rescribere*, which may mean either 'degrade to the rank of cavalry,' which in Caesar's army was composed entirely of foreigners (see Introduction, p. 10), or 'enrol among the equites,' or wealthy classes (Introduction, p. 12).

XLIII.

2. **aequo . . . spatio:** abl. of measure; so *passibus* and *intervallo* just below.

11. **quod . . . quod:** see on chap. xiv. l. 11.

13. **contigisse,** 'had fallen to the lot of'; *contingere* is generally used in a good sense; for *accidere* see on chap. xviii. l. 26.

13, 14. **hominum officiis,** 'services rendered by the recipients,' subjective genitive.

14. **docebat,** 'he proceeded to point out.'

14, 15. **cum . . . haberet,** 'though he had,' concessive subjunctive.

18. **ipsis cum Aeduis,** 'between Rome and the Aedui.'

20. **in eos,** 'in favour of the Aedui.'

ut: *not* 'that,' but 'how'; dependent question.

omni tempore, 'at all times,' abl. of time within which.

24. **sui nihil,** 'nothing of their own,' from *suus*, partitive gen.

25. **gratia . . . auctiores,** 'advanced in point of influence,' abl. of respect.

27. **eis:** for the dative see note on *Gallis equitibus*, chap. xlii. l. 19.

28. **in mandatis,** 'among his instructions,' or 'by way of instructions' (see chap. xxxv).

29. **inferret . . . redderet:** jussive subjunctive.

31. **at,** 'at least.'

XLIV.

6. **ipsis:** the Gauls themselves. Cp. with ch. xxxi. for the version of the Aedui.

12. **uno proelio:** see chap. xxxi. l. 50.

13. **paratum . . . decertare:** in the sense of 'willing,' *paratus* is followed by the infinitive; of 'ready,' i. e. 'prepared,' by *ad*, and the gerund or gerundive.

16. **sibi**: dative of person interested.

ornamento: predicative dative.

21, 22. **quod . . . traducat,** 'as for his bringing'; so in line 33 below; see on chap. xxxvi. l. 17.

25. **bellum . . . defenderit,** 'he waged not an offensive but a defensive war.'

28, 29. **quid sibi . . . veniret**: Oratio Recta *quid tibi vis? cur in meas . . . venis?* Another reading omits the question mark after *vellet*; 'what did he (Caesar) mean by coming into *his* (Ariovistus') possessions?' in which case *veniret* is dependent question after *vellet*.

30. **hanc . . . Galliam,** 'this part of Gaul belongs to me, just as the Province belongs to you Romans,' were his words.

33. **quod . . . interpellaremus**: in Oratio Recta *quod in meo iure vos interpellatis*.

35. **imperitum . . . rerum,** 'ignorant of the world.'

37. **ipsos**: the Aedui.

40, 41. **simulata . . . habere,** 'that, in spite of his pretended friendship, Caesar, in having an army in Gaul, really had it to crush him (Ariovistus) with.'

47. **compertum habere,** 'knew for a fact'; see on chap. xviii. l. 11.

48, 49. **quod si decessisset**: in this section Caesar leaves the graphic primary tenses which he has employed through the rest of chap. xliv. and returns to the strict sequence after the aorist perfect *praedicavit*. Oratio Recta: *quod si decesseris et mihi tradideris . . . remunerabo; et quaecunque . . . voles, sine ullo tuo labore . . . conficiam.*

XLV.

1, 2. **in eam sententiam . . . quare,** 'to show cause why.

6. **bello superatos**: B.C. 121; so that the Romans were there first by over sixty years.

9, 10. **antiquissimum quodque tempus,** 'the earliest date in each case,' 'priority in time.'

13. **quam . . . voluisset,** 'since the Senate had willed that, though conquered, it should retain its (internal) independence'; *quam = cum eam*, causal.

XLVI.

1. **dum . . . geruntur**: in the sense of 'while' *dum* always takes the present indicative; when it means 'so long as,

it may take any other tense. See also on chap. vii. l. 21.

2. **propius tumulum,** 'nearer the mound.' *Propior* and *proximus* also take the dative and the ablative with *a*.

7. **legionis . . . proelium,** 'an engagement between his picked legion and Ariovistus' cavalry.'

9. **pulsis hostibus,** 'if the enemy were beaten,' conditional abl. abs.

9, 10. **per fidem,** 'through trusting in his assurance.'

11. **elatum est,** 'it got about,' 'news spread.'

12. **Gallia:** abl. of separation.

Romanis: dative of disadvantage. The regular phrase for banishment is *aqua et igni alicui interdicere.*

14. **ea . . . res . . . ut,** 'how this act of treachery'; subjunctive of dependent question.

multo: abl. of measure of difference.

XLVII.

1. **biduo post,** 'two days afterwards'; abl. of measure.

2. **coeptae:** with passive verbs *coeptus est* is used for *coepit.*

3, 4. **uti . . . constitueret:** sc. 'asking him,' from *velle.*

6. **eo magis:** for the abl. see on *multo*, chap. xlvi. l. 14.

6, 7. **pridie eius diei:** see on chap xxiii. l. 1.

15. **multa iam,** 'by this time fluently,' 'with ease.'

16. **in eo,** 'in his case.'

17. **causa non esset,** 'had (as he thought) no motive'; virtual Oratio Obliqua.

18. **hospitio . . . utebatur,** 'was a guest-friend of,' and men who had eaten each other's bread would not deal treacherously with each other.

22. **an** is regularly used as the second member of an alternative question; but it often stands alone to express remonstrance, surprise, or irony.

XLVIII.

1. **milibus:** for the case cp. chap. xxi. l. 2, and chap. xli. l. 13.

2, 3. **postridie eius diei:** see on chap. xxiii. l. 1.

6. **supportaretur:** subjunctive, because part of the thought in the mind of Ariovistus; the indicative would have been used if Caesar had been expressing merely the fact.

9, 10. **ut . . . non deesset:** not *ne*, although in a final

clause, because the negative goes closely with *deesset*, 'in order that there might be every opportunity'; cp. note on *si non*, chap. xxxv. l. 17.

10, 11. **his . . . diebus**: abl. of time within which.

14. **numero**: abl. of respect.

15. **singuli singulos**, 'each horseman one.'

17, 18. **si quid erat durius**, 'in case of any difficulty,' lit. anything harder (than usual).

19, 20. **si quo . . . prodeundum**, 'if the cavalry had to advance any considerable distance.'

22. **sublevati**: exactly our 'with a lift from.'

XLIX.

1, 4, 5. **castris . . . locum**: the frequent repetition of these words in this chapter is noticeable.

5. **acie . . . triplici**: see Introduction, p. 18.

7, 8. **circiter . . . sexcentos**, 'six hundred or thereabouts'; for the case cp. chap. xli. l. 18.

11. **perterrerent**: final subj.; *quae = ut eae*. See on chap. xi. l. 3.

L.

1. **instituto suo**, 'according to his custom,' abl. of manner; see chap. xxxii. l. 2.

7. **quae . . . oppugnaret**, 'to attack,' final subjunctive.

12. **decertaret**: note the tense, 'was not risking a decisive battle.'

14. **sortibus**: Tacitus (*Germania*, chap. x) thus describes the method of divination by lots: 'A bough is lopped off a fruit-bearing tree, and cut into small pieces; these are distinguished by certain marks, and thrown at random over a white garment. The priest takes up each piece, and finds in them a meaning according to the mark previously impressed on them' (Church and Brodribb's translation).

16. **ex usu**, 'advantageous.'

17. **superare**: absolutely, as in chap. xl. l. 28, 'that the Gauls should win.'

18. **contendissent**: they said *contenderitis*, fut. perf. indic.

LI.

1. **postridie eius diei**: see on chap. xxiii. 1.

3. **alarios**: see Introduction, p. 10.

4, 5. **minus . . . pro . . . numero**, 'he was rather weak in comparison with,' or 'considering the number'; cp. chap. ii. l. 17.

13. **eo**, 'into these'; cp. chap. xliii. l. 20.

14. **proficiscentes**, 'them as they started.'

LII.

1, 2. **singulis . . . quaestorem**: apparently five of the six legions were each commanded by a *legatus*, and the sixth by a *quaestor*. See Introduction, p. 11.

3, 4. **eam partem**: the German left.

5, 6. **ita . . . itaque**: the first *ita* qualifies *acriter*, the second (= *et ita*), *repente*.

10. **phalange facta**: see on chap. xxiv. l. 18. They would close their ranks, and interlock their shields, while the pikes projected in front.

11, 12. **reperti . . . insilirent**, 'in many cases our soldiers were found bold enough to leap,' consecutive subjunctive.

14. **cum . . . a sinistro cornu**, 'though on their (the German) left flank,' concessive subj.

18. **expeditior**, 'more at liberty,' 'more free to act.'

20. **subsidio**, 'to relieve,' dative of purpose.

nostris: dative of advantage; cp. chap. xxv. l. 9.

LIII.

2, 4. **prius . . . quam . . . pervenerunt**: see note on chap. xix. l. 14.

5. **viribus**: abl. With persons *confido* takes the dat. as in chap. xl. l. 55.

6. **inventis . . . reppererunt**: *invenire* is to find by accident, come upon; *reperire*, to find by search. Note that *linter* is the only feminine word in *-er* of the third decl., except, of course, *mulier*.

8. **equitatu**: see on chap. viii. 1.

11. **duxerat**: sc. *in matrimonium*, 'had married.'

15. **trinis**: distributive, because Caesar uses *catenae* only in the plural.

21. **eius calamitate**, 'by any disaster to him,' Procillus.

23, 24. **sortibus consultum**, 'the lots had been consulted'; lit. 'it had been consulted by means of the lots.'

LIV.

2. **ad ripas Rheni**: see chap. xxxvii. l. 7.

6. **maturius paulo**: probably in September. For the case see on chap. ii. l. 7.

6, 7. **in hiberna in Sequanos**: see note on chap. xxxi. l. 35.

9. **ad conventus agendos**, 'to hold the assizes.' Once a year the governor of a province had to attend at the chief town of each district (*conventus*) in his province, for the purpose of deciding law-suits, and the like. No doubt Caesar found it also a convenient opportunity of getting into closer touch with politics at Rome.

EXERCISES

I, II.

1. The reason why they are brave is that they are far-removed from civilization (use *propterea quod*).
2. We are at constant warfare with the Germans across the Rhine.
3. Their land, which on one side is bounded by the sea, lies north-east (see i. 23).
4. He was led on by ambition to form a conspiracy.
5. Cicero surpassed the rest of the Romans in eloquence.
6. Let us persuade them to come out with us.

III, IV.

1. They got together as large a supply of corn as possible.
2. Don't you think three days will suffice for these preparations?
3. He married his daughter to Dumnorix, a chief of the Aedui.
4. Can you prove to him that it is quite an easy matter to seize (*occupo*) the kingdom?
5. There is no doubt the Helvetii were very powerful.
6. He escaped standing his trial, but afterwards committed suicide.

V, VI.

1. I am ready to endure all dangers.
2. As our house is-on-fire (*ardeo*), let us fire our neighbour's.
3. It is much easier to cross the river by the ford.
4. It does not seem as if (say 'you do not seem') you were well-disposed towards Rome (the Roman people).

5. The army started on April 1, and returned home on November 12.
6. Follow (*utor*) my advice, and don't try to cross the river to-day.

VII, VIII.

1. Caesar ordered the whole province to furnish soldiers.
2. I have ordered the bridge near Geneva to be cut down.
3. On being informed of his approach, they asked leave (*licēre*) to withdraw.
4. I hardly think men of so unfriendly a temper will refrain from violence.
5. If you want anything, take a day to think over it.
6. The Dutch (*Batavi*) are building fortresses, the more easily to frighten the foreigners (*peregrini*).

IX, X.

1. You cannot obtain your request against my will (use *invitus*).
2. He succeeded in effecting an exchange of hostages (ix. 12.)
3. Attracted by the hope of gain (*lucrum*) the nobility were eager for a revolution.
4. News is brought that the enemy intend to attack the town of Lutetia.
5. Hearing this the general led his men by forced marches into Gaul.
6. If we seize the higher ground (plur.), we shall check their advance (them advancing).

XI, XII.

1. Being unable to protect their-property, they sent to ask help from their neighbours (acc.).
2. I feel I ought not to wait till there is nothing left but disgrace.
3. The colonists pointed out that they demanded nothing but the franchise (*ius suffragii*).
4. The river flowed so gently that it was impossible for the eye to judge its direction.
5. Some stood their ground (*in loco manere*), others hid themselves in the woods.
6. Whether by design or by accident, the consul inflicted lasting disgrace on his people.

XIII, XIV.

1. The colonel of the engineers (*praefectus fabrum*) had a bridge built over the river.
2. Neither forget the former disaster to Britain (of the Britains) nor look down on us, though we are few.
3. We have learnt this lesson, to rely on courage rather than on trickery.
4. I am all the more vexed (xiv. 4) because this disaster has happened to an innocent man.
5. He who boasts too much of victory, sometimes enjoys prosperity but a short time.
6. This being so, let us observe moderation (*temperantia utor*).

XV, XVI.

1. Send out scouts as quickly as possible to see which way they go.
2. The Gauls were so elated by success that they began to harass our rear.
3. Lying as it does (use *cum*) in the north, our land is short of corn owing to the cold.
4. He called together the chiefs and soundly (*vehementer*) rated them.
5. It is a mark of wisdom (say 'it is of a wise man') to delay at so critical a moment.
6. It was largely your complaints (*querella*) that induced (xvi. 21) the State to declare (*indicere*) war.

XVII, XVIII.

1. If we cannot maintain our supremacy, it is better (*praestat*) to give in at once.
2. The tribunes had more influence with the lower classes (*plebs*) than the consuls themselves.
3. You don't perceive, do you? with what danger to the State this decision is fraught (say 'you will resolve these things').
4. Catiline was a man of the greatest boldness, and no one (*nec quisquam*) dared to arrest him.
5. For several years now he has been maintaining (present) a squadron of cavalry at his own expense.
6. Should anything happen to you, your brother hopes to be made general.

XIX, XX.

1. 'There is reason enough,' said the master, 'why I should punish you.'
2. 'But there's just one objection, that (*quod*) I cannot find a cane (*ferula*).'
3. Before any one could stop him the boy threw himself at his (*ei*) feet.
4. Weeping bitterly (xx. 1) he besought him to do nothing harsh to him.
5. After pointing out what faults he had to find with him,
6. He advised him for the future to study more diligently.

XXI, XXII.

1. I will send (men) to ascertain the character of the country, and the number of the enemy (use *qualis* and *quot*).
2. You have come the same way as I, over the top of the ridge.
3. The three envoys galloped to Geneva at full speed.
4. If you don't (*nisi*) see our reinforcements approaching, don't join battle.
5. The lieutenant drew up his forces and waited till the enemy should attack.
6. The Romans pitched their camp twelve miles from that of the Gauls.

XXIII, XXIV, XXV.

1. The town of Bibracte, where he was hastening, was not more than eighteen miles away (see note on xxiii. 4).
2. Whether from fright or from excess of (*nimius*, adj.) caution they changed their minds and retired home.
3. The Gauls were much hampered by the fact that (*quod*) our darts pierced several shields at a blow.
4. Our men fired a volley, then wheeled about and charged.
5. A long and stubborn fight took place (impersonal) round the two (not *duo*) camps.
6. To do away with the hope of escape, he gave orders for the horses to be removed.

XXVI, XXVII.

1. Though the battle lasted from dawn till late at night (*multa nox*), not many were killed.

2. They marched night and day (xxvi. 17) till they got home.
3. The absolute failure of provisions induced us to propose surrender (xxvii. 1).
4. After arriving there, the general sent to demand hostages.
5. Are you afraid that if you lay down your arms (abl. abs.) you will be tortured ?
6. While the arms were being collected, a-great-many took the opportunity to escape.

XXVIII, XXIX.

1. Give us something to (*quod* with subj.) eat: we have nothing to stay the pangs of hunger (xxxviii. 8).
2. You shall receive the same terms as before, viz. to (*ut*) go back where you came from.
3. Let an account be taken of how many can bear arms.
4. On the petition of his friends, the prisoner was liberated.
5. In recognition of his conspicuous bravery (xxviii. 12), he received the Victoria Cross (*cōrōna cīvīca*).
6. It is fair (*aequus*) that both inhabitants and strangers (*advena*) should enjoy equal rights of freedom.

XXX, XXXI.

1. On the conclusion of the war, the rest of the chiefs came to Caesar at Bibracte.
2. This occurrence has been as much to your advantage as to mine.
3. We need (*opus est*) ships, that no one may make war on us.
4. There were two parties in Gaul, headed respectively by the Aedui and the Arverni (xxxi. 10, 11).
5. Ariovistus was so passionate (*iracundus*) that no one could endure his tyranny any longer.
6. In a few months, we shall all have to do what others have done, viz. (*ut*) quit the country.

XXXII, XXXIII, XXXIV.

1. Not even in secret did they dare to complain of their wrongs.
2. It is not to be thought that they will refrain from making war.
3. We must take immediate steps to meet them (xxxiii. 22, 23).

4. I wish to discuss with you matters of deep importance to both.
5. If you had wanted anything from me, you should have come before.
6. I wonder what business Rome has here at all.

XXXV, XXXVI, XXXVII.

1. Though (*cum*) you have been called 'friend,' you show very little gratitude.
2. The rule in war is that the conquerors give what orders they like to the conquered (xxxvi. 1, 2).
3. It is my custom to give orders not according to other people's notions, but as I think fit.
4. You are doing us grave injury in diminishing (*qui* with subj.) our revenues.
5. The Aedui came to complain of the Harudes ravaging their territory.
6. Getting supplies together with all possible speed, he advanced by forced marches.

XXXVIII, XXXIX.

1. There was an abundant store of munitions of war (xxxviii. 7, 8).
2. The Belgae were men of huge stature and remarkable bravery.
3. Such a panic seized them that it threw the minds of all off their balance (*perturbo*).
4. One alleged one excuse, another another, but all asked leave of absence.
5. Of course (*scilicet*) it's not the enemy I'm afraid of, but I fear corn will run short (*deficere*).
6. There were some (*erant qui*) who did not obey orders, even (*ne . . . quidem*) when the signal was given (abl. abs.).

XLI, XLII.

1. On the delivery of this speech, a wonderful change came over the feelings of all.
2. The legion thanked Caesar for having formed so high an opinion of it.
3. We consider that the main conduct of the war rests with the general.
4. I entertain strong hopes that he will abandon his obstinate attitude (xlii. 10).

5. Fearing he might be entrapped, he asked Caesar not to bring any infantry.
6. In case of need, I want to have as friendly a guard as possible.

XLVI, XLVII.

1. He commanded his men not to answer the enemy's fire (xlvi. 6).
2. After they heard what presumptuousness Ariovistus had shown (*utor*), our men became much more eager for the fray.
3. He wanted to discuss the subjects which had begun to be discussed two days before.
4. Valerius's father was given the citizenship by Flaccus.
5. Before they could answer, he bawled out that they were spies.
6. He cut short their attempted explanation, and threw them into chains.

XLVIII, XLIX.

1. The next day he moved forward his camp and cut off the supplies of the Aedui.
2. If he wanted to fight, he would not neglect this opportunity.
3. I have been waiting (present) for five successive days.
4. The infantry ran so fast that they could keep up with the cavalry.
5. We must send forward a detachment (*turma*) of cavalry past the place where the enemy have taken position.
6. None the less the work was completed within five days.

L, LI.

1. Both sides fought fiercely till evening, and many wounds were received and inflicted.
2. The matrons declared whether it was expedient or not to engage.
3. Ask the prisoners why the camp has been attacked.
4. He left behind what he thought was a sufficient garrison, and advanced with the rest of his forces.
5. There was now no help for it (li. 8), so they determined to join battle.
6. The women besought them with tears not to allow them to be enslaved.

The following exercises are on Oratio Obliqua, and are taken from chapters xxxi, xxxvi, xl, xliv. They should be translated as dependent (1) on a primary tense, as *dicit*; (2) an historic tense, as *dixit.*

XXXI.

1. We are anxious that what we shall say be not divulged.
2. If it is divulged, we see we shall be tortured.
3. There are now in Gaul about twenty thousand Germans.
4. We who by our valour have been very powerful are now forced to give hostages.
5. Worse has befallen the conquerors than the conquered.
6. In a few years it will come to pass that all the Germans will settle in Gaul.
7. The Gauls must do the same as the Helvetii have done and (*ut* with subj.) emigrate.
8. By your authority you can prevent more from crossing the Rhine.

XXXVI.

1. The conquerors can order the conquered just as they please.
2. If I don't dictate to the Romans, it is not right that I should be hampered by them.
3. Caesar is doing me much harm, in (*qui* with subj.) not abiding by what was agreed.
4. Give me battle when you like; no one has fought with me without ruin to himself.
5. I will not give the Aedui their hostages back; they are my tributaries.
6. Caesar will soon see what the Germans can do in point of valour.

XL.

1. What, pray, are you afraid of? Why do you despair of victory?
2. I am convinced he will not reject our terms.
3. These are the same men that the Helvetii have often beaten.
4. I shall strike my camp about the fourth watch to-night.
5. If no one else follows me, I will go with the tenth legion alone.
6. Do not suppose that I am disturbed because you are mutinous (*dicto non esse audiens*).

XLIV.

1. If they want peace, let them pay the tribute they have paid hitherto.
2. The friendship of Rome ought to have been a protection to me.
3. If I had not been invited, I should not have come into Gaul.
4. What is it you want? Why are you coming into my (part of) Gaul?
5. Who is so ignorant of the world as not to know that the Romans received no aid from the Aedui?
6. If you had not come to their aid, they would undoubtedly have been beaten (use *futurum fuisse ut*).
7. If no one had come to their aid, they would not have beaten the enemy.
8. Do not bring it about (*committo*) that this place gets a name from a disaster to Rome (see end of xiii).
9. Can any one forget the wrongs which the Germans have inflicted (xiv. 12)?

INDEX TO NOTES, MAINLY GRAMMATICAL

Ab, 'from neighbourhood of,' vii. 2; 'on side of,' i. 20.
Abdo in, with accusative, xii. 13.
Ac, atque, after words of likeness, &c., xxviii. 19.
Accedo, passive of *addo*, xix. 2.
Accusative in *-im*, xii. 8.
Ad, with names of towns, vii. 4; xxxix. 1.
Adjective used adverbially, xxxii. 5.
Agent, dative of, xxxii. 16.
Alleged reason, subjunctive, iii. 3; vi. 14; xix. 3; xxiii. 8; xxvii. 14; xli. 4.
Amplius, with *quam* **omitted**, xxxviii. 12; xli. 13.
Anaphora, xiv. 11; xix. 3; xliii. 11.
Antecedent repeated, vi. 1, 16; xvi. 11.
Antecedent supplied, xl. 19.
Apposition, xxx. 1.
'At,' to translate, xxxi. 34.
Attraction: of mood, xxiii. 8; xxxix. 14.
  of number, xxix. 10.
  of relative, xxxviii. 3.

CASES—

Ablative absolute, or of attendant circumstances, or of accompaniment, i. 2; iii. 25; vii. 18; ix. 1, 4; xvi. 19; xxx. 7; xxxii. 5; xlvi. 9.
Instrument, vi. 9; viii. 1; xv. 9.
Manner, xxv. 12; xxxii. 2; xxxv. 14; xxxvi. 13; xxxvii. 14; xlii. 15; l. 1.
Measure, xliii. 2.

Measure of difference, ii. 7; v. 1; viii. 7; xiv. 3, 16; xxiii. 9; xxxii. 10; xli. 18; xlvi. 14; xlvii. 1, 6; liv. 6.
Place, i. 16; xxii. 18; xxv. 18.
Quality, vi. 13; vii. 18; xii. 2; xviii. 7; xxviii. 16; xxxviii. 14; xxxix. 4.
Respect, i. 4, 14; ii. 6; iii. 19; xxxvi. 22; xliii. 25; xlviii. 14.
Route, xvi. 7; xli. 12.
Separation, i. 16; viii. 13; xlvi. 12.
Time, point of, iv. 4; xvi. 11; xxxi. 41; xl. 18.
Time, within which, xi. 6; xii. 16; xiii. 4; xxvi. 16; xxxi. 44; xliii. 20; xlviii. 10.
With confido, liii. 5.

Accusative: *Double Accusative*, xvi. 1; xxxiv. 7.
Duration of time, xxvi. 16.
Extent or *respect*, iii. 22; ix. 6; xvii. 3; xx. 5, 6; xxi. 2; xxv. 14; xxxiv. 7; xl. 45.
Motion towards, v. 7; xxxi. 34.
With impero, vii. 5.
With propius, xlvi. 2.
With tempero, xxxiii. 17.

Dative: *Advantage or disadvantage* (person or thing affected), xvii. 10; xviii. 33; xxv. 6; xxxi. 5; xlii. 19; xliv. 16; xlvi. 12; lii. 20.
Agent, xxxii. 16.
Person judging, xxviii. 2.
Predicative or *purpose*, xviii. 33; xxv. 6; xxxiii. 2; xxxviii. 7; xl. 41; xliv. 16; lii. 20.
Reference, see Advantage, xxxi. 5.
With confido, xix. 17; liii. 5.
With detraho, xlii. 19.
With eripio, xliii. 27.
With impero, vii. 5.
With praesto, ii. 6.
With propius, xlvi. 2.
With tempero, xxxiii. 17.

Genitive: *Containing*, x. 17.
Definition, viii. 16.
Locative (of price), xx. 17.
Measure, v. 9; xxxviii. 12; xli. 12.
Objective, xiii. 14; xviii. 9; xix. 17, 23; xx. 18; xxx. 1.
Partitive, iii. 22; xi. 15; xiv. 3; xix. 7; xxi. 8; xxxi. 55; xl. 21; xliii. 24.
Possessive, x. 17; xxxviii. 5.

Price, xx. 17.
Quality or *description*, v. 9 ; xxxviii. 12 ; xli. 12.
Subjective, xxx. 1 ; xliii. 13.
With potior, iii. 27.
With postridie, xxiii. 1.
Change of subject, xxvii. 4.
Coeptus, with passive verbs, xlvii. 2.
Cogo, construction of, vi. 15.
Collective noun, with plural verb, ii. 4.
Comparative final clause, viii. 7.
Concessive ablative absolute, xxx. 7.
Concessive participle, xxxv. 3, 4.
Concord of verb, with nearest subject, i. 6 ; xxvi. 14 ; xxvii. 11 ; xxix. 10.
Conditional ablative absolute, iii. 25 ; vii. 18 ; ix. 1 ; xlvi. 9.
Conditional participle, iv. 3.
Conor si, viii. 16.
Consequi, i. 17.
Constructio ad sensum, xxvii. 11.
Cum : enclitic, i. 12.
conjunction with indic. and subj., i. 15 ; xliii. 14.
Curo, construction of, xiii. 2.

De tertia vigilia, xii. 8 ; xxi. 5.
Demonstrative for reflexive, v. 13 ; xi. 8 ; xiv. 10.
Dependent question : see **Subjunctive**.
Deponent verbs, used passively, xi. 11.
Detraho, construction of, xlii. 19.
Diem de die, xvi. 9.
Dies, gender of, vi. 16 ; viii. 9.
Difficile fuit, xiv. 6.
Domum = homewards, v. 7.
Dubito, construction of, xxxi. 61.
Dum, construction of, vii. 20 ; xi. 17 ; xlvi. 1.

Eis, for *sibi* : see **Reflexive**.
Emphatic position of words, vi. 4 ; vii. 13 ; xviii. 12 ; xxv. 10 ; xxvi. 2.
Eo : adv. = *in eos*, xlii. 20; li. 13.
pronoun, with comparatives : see **Ablative** of *Measure of difference*.
Eripio, construction of, xliii. 27.
Et, after *idem*, xxxvii. 1.
Euphemism, xiii. 13 ; xviii. 26 ; xx. 10.

Ex = 'in,' 'on,' i. 20; ii. 15; iv. 2.
Ex itinere, xxv. 8.
Explanatory clause: (1) infinitive, vii. 1; (2) *ut* and subjunctive, iv. 3; v. 2; x. 6; xiii. 5; xxxi. 58; xxxv. 5.

Fidem habere, xix. 17.
Fuit = *fuisset*, xiv. 6.

Genitive plural in *-um*, v. 9.
Gerundive in *-undus*, vii. 19.
Graphic use of primary tenses, vii. 14; xxxi. 12, 49; xl. 27; xliv. 48.

Habeo, with perf. part. pass., xv. 4; xviii. 11; xliv. 47.
Hendiadys, xxxi. 52.
Hic, antecedent to relative, xxiv. 9.
Historic infinitive, xvi. 2, 10; xxxii. 6.
Historic present, iii. 14.

Imperfect subjunctive, after historic present: see **Historic present**.
Imperfect tense, force of, xxxviii. 9.
Impero, construction of, vii. 5.
In: with accus., pregnant use of, xii. 13.
with abl. = 'considering,' xxxiii. 12.
Interdico, construction of, xlvi. 12.
Is, for reflexive: see **Demonstrative**.

Medius, used partitively, xxiv. 4.
Mensis, gen. plural of, v. 9.
Mille, as noun, xxv. 14.

MOODS—

Imperative, in Oratio Obliqua: see **Jussive Subjunctive**.
Indicative, with *qui*, ii. 19; in Oratio Obliqua, xl. 15.
Infinitive, historic, xvi. 2, 10; xxxii. 6.
Subjunctive: *Alleged reason*, iii. 3; vi. 14; xvi. 22; xix. 3; xxiii. 8; xxvii. 14; xli. 4.
Causal, xvi. 22; xix. 3; xxxvi. 21; xlv. 13.
Concessive, xiv. 19; xxvi. 5; xxxi. 24; xliii. 14.
Consecutive, iii. 3; v. 2; xxix. 5; lii. 11.
Dependent question, xv. 4; xix. 7; xx. 20; xxxix. 29; xliii. 20.

Final or *purpose*, vi. 17; vii. 11, 20; viii. 7; xi. 17; xv. 14; xxiv. 2; xxviii. 8; xxxiv. 2; xlviii. 10; l. 7.
In Oratio Obliqua, iii. 3; vi. 14; xvi. 2; xxvii. 7, 14; xlviii. 6.
Indefinite, xxvii. 7.
Jussive, vii. 23; xiii. 12, 17; xx. 2, 16; xxvi. 21; xxxvi. 20; xlii. 15; xliii. 29.
Restrictive use of, xxxv. 19.
Temporal, xxiii. 2 (see also **Cum**).
Used by attraction, xxiii. 8; xxxix. 14.
Mŏlīta, v. 9.
Motion, with proper names, xxxi. 34; liv. 6.

Ne quis, use of, xx. 1; xxx. 8.
Nec quisquam, use of, xx. 3.
Neve, use of, xxvi. 22; xxxv. 13.
Noster, in Oratio Obliqua, xi. 7; xvii. 11.
Novus, xv. 6.

Opus est, construction of, xxxiv. 7.
Oratio Obliqua virtual, iii. 3; vi. 14; xxxii. 5; xli. 4 (see **Alleged reason**); questions in, xiv. 9; tenses in, vii. 14 (see also **Sequence**).

Paratus, construction of, xliv. 13.
Participle, concessive, xxxv. 3; conditional, iv. 3, 4; with *habere*, see **Habeo**.
Partitive use of adjective, xxii. 1; xxiv. 4.
'People,' to translate, iii. 26.
Persuadeo, construction of, ii. 4.
Posse, for future infinitive, iii. 27.
Postquam, construction of, xxiv. 1.
Postridie, construction of, xxiii. 1.
Potior, construction of, iii. 27.
Praesto, construction of, ii. 6.
Pregnant use of preposition, xii. 13.
Present historic: see **Historic present**.
Pridie, construction of, xxiii. 1.
Primary tenses in Oratio Obliqua: see **Graphic use**.
Priusquam, construction of, xix. 14; liii. 2.
Propior, with acc. and dat., xlvi. 2.
Purpose, to express, xi. 5.

Quam, omitted after comparative, xxxviii. 12; xli. 13; with superlatives, iii. 4.

Questions in Oratio Obliqua. xiv. 9.
Quin, with *dubito*, xxxi. 61; *tempero*, xxxiii. 17.
Quo = *ut eo*, viii. 7; xxviii. 8.
Quod, restrictively with subjunctive, xxxv. 19: with subjunctive, see **Alleged reason**.
Quominus, with *recuso*, xxxi. 29.

Recuso, construction of, xxxi. 29.
Reditio, verbal notion of, v. 7.
Reflexive, use of, v. 13; vi. 15; xi. 8; xiv. 10.
Relative and antecedent, see **Attraction**.
Repetition of antecedent, vi. 1, 16; xvi. 11.

Se *and* **suus**, iii. 14; v. 13; xiii. 17; xiv. 10; xxxvi. 17.
Sequence of tenses, iii. 4; vii. 11; xiii. 1; xiv. 15: see also **Oratio Obliqua, tenses in.**
Si, after verbs of endeavouring, viii. 16.
Si non, instead of *nisi*, xxxi. 53; xxxv. 17; xxxvi. 15.
Summus, used partitively, xxii. 1.
Supero, absolutely, l. 17.
Supine in *-u*, iii. 19; in *-um*, xi. 5; xviii. 20.

Tanti, of price, xx. 17.
Tempero, construction of, xxxiii. 17.
Tenses in Oratio Obliqua: see **Oratio Obliqua.**
'**That of**,' '**those of**,' to translate, xxi. 13; xxxi. 64.

Ut, with explanatory clause, see **Explanatory clause**; after *vereor*, xxxix. 29; in dependent question, xliii. 20.
Uterque *and* **ambo**, xxxiv. 4.
Ut non, in final clause, xlviii. 9

Vădo, vādo, vi. 9.
Vereor ut, xxxix. 29.
Volo, construction of, xxxiv. 7.

INDEX OF PROPER NAMES

A. Aulus. *See* Gabinius.

Admagetobriga, -ae, *f.* A town of the Sequani, where they were defeated by Ariovistus in B. C. 61 (ch. xxxi).

Aedui, -orum, *m.* (*adj.*, Aeduus). A powerful Celtic tribe, between the Saône and the Loire; rivals of the Arverni; chief town Bibracte (later Augustodunum, whence modern Autun) (ch. x, xi, xxiii, xxxiii, &c.).

Allobroges, -um, *m.* A Celtic tribe, between the Rhone, the Isère, Lake Lemannus (Geneva), and the Alps (ch. vi, x, xi, xiv).

Ambarri, -orum, *m.* A Celtic tribe, north-west of the Allobroges, about the Saône; kinsmen of the Aedui (ch. xi).

Aquilēia, -ae, *f.* A Latin colony in Venetia, north-east of Cisalpine Gaul; founded B. C. 181 (ch. x).

Aquitāni, -orum, *m.* (*adj.*, Aquitānus). The inhabitants of Aquitania, the south-west district of Gaul, between the Pyrenees, the Garonne, the Ocean, and the Province (ch. i).

Arar, -aris, *m.* The river Arar (Saône), rising in the Vosges, and flowing into the Rhone at Lugdūnum (Lyons) (ch. xii).

Ariovistus, -i, *m.* Chief of the Suevi, and leader of the German invasion of Gaul; defeated by Caesar at Vesontio, autumn of B. C. 58 (ch. xxxi–liv).

Arverni, -orum, *m.* A powerful Celtic tribe, north-west of the Cevennes, modern Auvergne; rivals of the Aedui; chief town Gergovia (ch. xxxi, xlv).

Belgae, -arum, *m. pl.* Inhabitants of Gallia Belgica, the north-east part of Gaul, between the Seine and the Marne on the south, and the Meuse and the lower Rhine on the north (ch. i).

Bibracte, -is, *n.* Chief town of the Aedui (q. v.) near

which the Helvetii were defeated (ch. xxiii).

Bituriges, -um, *m.* A tribe to the west of the Aedui, in the valley of the Loire. Another branch of them was settled at the mouth of the Garonne (ch. xviii).

Boii, -orum, *m. pl.* A Celtic tribe in Central Gaul, to the north-west of Lugdūnum (Lyons); another part of the tribe settled in Cisalpine Gaul, in the neighbourhood of the present Parma and Modena (ch. v, xxv, xxviii, xxix).

Caesar, -aris, *m.* Gaius Julius Caesar. *See* Introduction.

Cassiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Cassius.

Cassius, -i, *m.* Lucius Cassius Longīnus, consul B. C. 107; defeated in that year by the Tigurini near Lake Lemannus (ch. xii).

Casticus, -i, *m.* A chief of the Sequani, conspired with Orgetorix (ch. iii).

Catamantaloedes, -is, *m.* A chief of the Sequani, father of Casticus (ch. iii).

Caturiges, -um, *m. pl.* A Ligurian tribe in the Province (ch. x).

Celtae, -arum, *m. pl.* (*adj.*, Celticus). The Celts, the inhabitants of Central Gaul (ch. i).

Ceutrones, -um, *m. pl.* A tribe in the Province, on the upper Isère (ch. x).

Cimberius, -i, *m.* A chieftain of the Suevi, complained of by the Treveri (ch. xxxvii).

Cimbri, -orum, *m. pl.* A German tribe which, together with the Teutones, overran Gaul and defeated several Roman armies before they were crushed by Marius and Catulus at Vercellae, B. C. 101 (ch. xxxiii).

Cn. Gnaeus.

Considius, -i, *m.* A soldier in Caesar's army (ch. xxii).

Crassus, -i, *m.* (1) Marcus Licinius Crassus, one of the first triumvirate with Caesar and Pompey, B. C. 60; consul B. C. 55; fell in B. C. 53 at Carrhae while fighting with the Parthians (ch. xxi); (2) his son Publius Crassus, also killed at Carrhae (ch. lii).

Dīvico, -ōnis, *m.* A chieftain of the Helvetii, commanded in the war against Cassius, B. C. 107 (ch. xiii, xiv).

Dīvitiacus, -i, *m.* A chieftain of the Aedui, brother of Dumnorix, head of the pro-Roman party in Gaul (ch. iii, xviii–xx, xxxi, xxxii).

Dūbis, -is, *m.* The river Dubis, modern Doubs, rising in the Jura and flowing into the Arar (Saône) (ch. xxxviii).

Dumnorix, -igis, *m.* A chieftain of the Aedui, brother

of Divitiacus; supported the Helvetii against Rome (ch. iii, ix, xviii, xix, xx).

Fabius, -i, *m.* Quintus Fabius Maximus, consul B.C. 121–120; defeated the Allobroges and Arverni in that year (ch. xlv).

Gabinius, -i, *m.* Aulus Gabinius, tribune in B.C. 67, proposer of the Lex Gabinia, consul B.C. 58 (ch. vi).

Galli, -orum, *m. pl.* The Gauls (*adj.* Gallicus, -a, -um, Gallic).

Gallia, -ae, *f.* Gaul (*see* ch. i).

Garumna, -ae, *m.* The river Garumna, modern Garonne, south-west of Gaul (ch. i).

Genāva, -ae, *f.* Geneva, a town of the Allobroges, at the south-west corner of the Lacus Lemannus, modern Lake of Geneva (ch. vi, vii).

Germāni, -orum, *m. pl.* The Germans; according to Roman reckoning, the inhabitants of the country lying between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the Ocean (ch. xxxi–liv).

Graecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek.

Graioceli, -orum, *m. pl.* A tribe living in the neighbourhood of Mount Cenis, south-east of the Allobroges (ch. x).

Harūdes, -um, *m. pl.* A German tribe between the Rhine, the Main, and the Danube (ch. xxxi, xxxvii, li).

Helvetii, -orum, *m. pl.* (*adj.* Helvetius, -a, -um). A Celtic tribe between Mount Jura, the lake of Geneva, the Rhone and the Rhine (the western and lower part of modern Switzerland) (ch. ii–xxix).

Hispānia, -ae, *f.* Spain.

Iūra, -ae, *m.* The Jura range, extending from Lugdūnum (Lyons) to Lake Venetus (the lake of Constance).

L. Lucius.

Labiēnus, -i, *m.* Titus Annius Labienus, Caesar's chief lieutenant through the campaigns in Gaul; the only one of Caesar's officers who took Pompey's side in the Civil War; killed at the battle of Munda, B.C. 45 (ch. x, xxi, xxii, liv).

Latovīci, -orum, *m. pl.* A German tribe, neighbours of the Helvetii (ch. xxix).

Lemannus, -i, *m.* The lake of Geneva.

Leuci, -orum, *m. pl.* A tribe in the north-west of Celtic Gaul, to the west of Mons Vosegus (Vosges) (ch. xl).

Lingones, -um, *m. pl.* A Celtic tribe in the Vosges mountains, near the sources of the Meuse and the Marne; chief town Ande-

matūnum, later Lingones, modern Langres (ch. xxvi, xl).

Liscus, -i, *m.* Vergobrete or chief magistrate of the Aedui (ch. xvi, xvii, xviii).

M. Marcus.

Marcomāni, -orum, *m. pl.* ('Men of the Marches,' 'Bordermen'), a tribe of the Suevi, in the upper basin of the Elbe (ch. li).

Marius, -i, *m.* Gaius Marius, the conqueror of Jugurtha and of the Cimbri and Teutons; seven times consul; reformer of the Roman army system, born B. C. 157, died B. C. 86 (ch. xl).

Matrona, -ae, *m.* The Marne, a tributary of the Seine, into which it flows near Paris (ch. i).

Messāla, -ae, *m.* Marcus Valerius Messala, consul B. C. 61 (ch. ii, xxxv).

Mettius, -i, *m.* Marcus Mettius, sent as envoy by Caesar to Ariovistus, and put in chains by the latter; afterwards rescued (ch. xlvii, liii).

Nammeius, -i, *m.* A Helvetian noble, sent as envoy to Caesar (ch. vii).

Nasua, -ae, *m.* A chieftain of the Suevi, complained of by the Treveri (ch. xxxvii).

Nemĕtes, -um (also -ae, -arum), *m. pl.* A German tribe in the east of Gaul, between the Vosges and the Rhine (ch. li).

Nōreia, -ae, *f.* Modern Neumarkt, chief town of the Nōrici, between the Danube and the Alps (north-east of Bavaria) (ch. v, liii).

Nōricus, -a, -um, *adj.* of the Norici, modern Styria (ch. v).

Ocelum, -i, *n.* A town of the Graioceli (q. v.) in the north-west of Gallia Cisalpina (ch. x).

Orgetorix, -igis, *m.* A leading noble of the Helvetii, who persuaded them to migrate; accused of aiming at the sovereignty over them and brought to trial, B. C. 61 (ch. ii, iii, iv).

P. Publius.

Pīsō, -ōnis, *m.* (1) Lucius Calpurnius Piso, consul B. C. 112, killed when lieutenant under Cassius (q. v.) B. C. 107; (2) L. C. Piso, father of Caesar's third wife Calpurnia, consul B. C. 58 (ch. xii); (3) Marcus Piso, consul B. C. 61 (ch. ii).

Procillus, -i, *m.* Gaius Valerius Procillus, a Gaul by birth and an intimate friend of Caesar's; acted as interpreter between him and Divitiacus (ch. xix); sent as envoy along with Mettius (ch. xlvii, liii).

Provincia, -ae, *f.* The Roman Province. *See* Introduction.

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, *adj.* P. montes, the Pyrenees, separating Aquitania from Hispania (ch. i).

Q. Quintus.

Raurici, -orum, *m. pl.* A Celtic tribe, to the north of the Helvetii, near modern Basle (ch. v, xxix).

Rhēnus, -i, *m.* The Rhine, separating Gaul from Germany (ch. i).

Rhodanus, -i, *m.* The Rhone (ch. i, ii, vi, viii, xii).

Rōma, -ae, *f.* Rome (*adj.* Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman).

Rutēni, -orum, *m. pl.* A Celtic tribe, north-east of Aquitania; chief town Segodunum; defeated by Q. Fabius Maximus, B. C. 121 (ch. xlv).

Santones, -um (or Santoni, -orum), *m. pl.* A Celtic tribe to the north-east of the mouth of the Garonne; chief town Mediolanum, modern Saintes (ch. x, xi).

Sedusii, -orum, *m.* A German tribe, exact position unknown (ch. li).

Segusiāvi, -orum, *m. pl.* A Celtic tribe to the west of the Allobroges and the Rhone; chief town Lugdūnum (Lyons) (ch. x).

Septentriōnes, -um, *m. pl.* The Great Bear or the Wain, *lit.* the seven plough oxen; *see* Vocabulary.

Sequana, -ae, *f.* The Seine (ch. i).

Sequani, -orum, *m. pl.* A powerful Celtic tribe, between the Saône, the Rhone, and Mount Jura; chief town Vesontio (Besançon) (ch. ix, x, xxxi–xxxv).

Suēbi or **Suēvi,** -orum, *m. pl.* (modern name Swabia). A powerful people of Germany, between the Elbe and the Oder; afterwards the name included the tribes from the Upper Rhine to the Vistula and the Baltic (called Oceanus Suevicus after them) (ch. xxxvii, li, liv).

Sulla, -ae, *m.* Lucius Cornelius Sulla, Marius's great rival, dictator B. C. 82–79; born B. C. 138, died B. C. 78 (ch. xxi).

T. Titus.

Teutoni, -orum (-ēs, -um), *m. pl.* A German tribe defeated by Marius at Aquae Sextiae (Aix), B. C. 102 (*see* **Cimbri**) (ch. xxxiii, xl).

Tigurīni, -orum, *m. pl.* (*adj.* Tigurinus, -a, -um), one of the Helvetian cantons (ch. xii).

Tolōsātes, -um, *m. pl.* The people of Tolosa (modern Toulouse) in the Province (ch. x).

Trēveri, -orum, *m. pl.* A half-German tribe on the Moselle, to the east of the Remi; chief town Augusta Treverorum, modern Trier or Trèves (ch. xxxvii).

Tribŏces, -um (or -i, -orum),

m. pl. A German tribe on the Rhine, near modern Strasburg (ch. li).

Tūlingi, -orum, *m. pl.* A German tribe on the right bank of the Rhine east of the Raurici (ch. v, xxv, xxviii, xxix).

Ubii, -orum, *m. pl.* A German tribe on the east bank of the Rhine about modern Cologne (ch. liv).

Valerius, -i, *m.* Gaius Valerius Flaccus, propraetor in Gaul B. C. 83 (c. xlvii). *See also* Procillus.

Vangiones, -um, *m. pl.* A German tribe on the Rhine, north of the Nemetes, about modern Worms (ch. li).

Verbigĕnus, -i, *m.* One of the Cantons of the Helvetii (ch. xxvii).

Verucloetius, -i, *m.* A Helvetian noble, one of the envoys to Caesar (ch. vii).

Vesontio, -ōnis, *m.* Chief town of the Sequani, on the Dubis (Doubs), modern Besançon (ch. xxxviii, xxxix).

Voccio, -ōnis, *m.* A Noric prince, brother-in-law of Ariovistus (ch. liii).

Vocontii, -orum, *m.* A tribe in the Province, to the south of the Isère (ch. x).

VOCABULARY

N.B.—*Where only the number of the conjugation is given, the verbs are regular in their principal parts. Only long vowels have the quantity marked.*

ā, ab, *prep. with abl.*, by, from, on the side of.

ab-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *v. a.*, hide.

ab-dūco, 3 *v. a.*, lead away.

abs-ens, -ntis, *adj.*, absent, distant.

abs-tineo, -ēre, -tinui, -tentum, *v. n.*, refrain.

ab-sum, -esse, -fui, *v. n.*, be absent, distant.

āc. *See* **atque.**

ac-cēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. n.*, go to, approach, be added.

ac-ceptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, acceptable, popular.

ac-cido, -ere, -cidi, *v. n.*, happen.

ac-cipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *v. a.*, receive, accept.

ac-curro, -ere, -cucurri *and* -curri, -cursum, *v. n.*, run up, hasten to.

ac-cūso, 1 *v. a.*, accuse, reproach.

ācer, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, sharp, fierce.

aciēs, -ēi, *f.*, line of battle.

ācriter, *adv.* (ācer), sharply, hotly, fiercely.

ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, towards, near, at; *with numbers*, about.

ad-aequo, 1 *v. a.*, make equal to; *cursum adaequare*, keep up with.

ad-amo, 1 *v. a.*, fall in love with.

ad-dūco, 3 *v. a.*, lead to, induce.

ad-equito, 1 *v. n.*, ride up to.

ad-hibeo, 2 *v. a.*, summon.

ad-itus, -ūs, *m.*, access, approach.

ad-mīror, 1 *v. dep.*, wonder at.

ad-missus, -a, -um (*p. p. p. of* admitto, to let go); *admisso equo*, at full gallop.

ad-orior, -īri, -ortus, *v. dep.*, attack.

ad-scisco, -ere, -īvi, -ītum, *v. a.*, join, attach.

ad-sum, -esse, -fui, *v. n.*, be at hand, present.

ad-ulescens, -ntis, *c.*, a youth; the younger (ch. lii).

ad-ulescentia, -ae, *f.*, youth (*properly, the age between* 15 *and* 30).

ad-ventus, -ūs, *m.*, approach, arrival.

ad-versus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unfavourable, unsuccessful.

ad-verto, -ere, -i, -sum, *v. a.*, turn to; *animum advertere*, observe, notice.

aedi-ficium, -i, *n.*, building.

aegrē, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly; *superl.*, aegerrime, with great difficulty.

aequitās, -ātis, *f.*, evenness, fairness.

aequo, 1 *v. a.*, make equal.

aequus, -a, -um, *adj.*, equal, level.

aestās, -ātis, *f.*, summer.

af-fero, af-ferre, at-tuli, allātum, *v. a.*, bring to, cause.

af-ficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, *v. a.*, affect, treat; *afficere supplicio*, inflict punishment.

af-fīnitās, -ātis, *f.*, kinship (*by marriage*).

ager, agri, *m.*, field, district; *esp. in plur.*, territory, lands.

ag-gredior, -i, -gressus, *v. dep.*, attack.

ag-men, -minis, *n.*, army on the march, column; *primum agmen*, the van; *novissimum agmen*, the rear; *claudere agmen*, bring up the rear.

ago, -ere, ēgi, actum, *v. a.*, do, act, drive; *agere cum*, treat with; *agere gratias*, thank; *agere conventus*, hold assizes.

alacritās, -ātis, *f.*, eagerness.

ālārii, -ōrum, *m.* (āla), wingmen, light-armed auxiliaries; *see* Introduction, p. 10.

aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, another's; *locus alienus*, unfavourable position.

aliquam-diū, *adv.*, for some time.

aliquis, -qua, -quid, *pron.*, some one; aliqui (quis), -qua, -quod, *adj.*, some.

alius, -a, -um, *adj.*, another, other; *alius . . . alius*, the one . . . the other.

alo, -ere, alui, alitum (altum), *v. a.*, feed, support.

alter, -era, -erum, *adj.*, the other (*of two*); *alter . . . alter*, the one . . . the other; *plur.* of two sets *or* parties.

altitūdo, -inis, *f.*, height, depth; *in altitudinem*, to a height of.

altus, -a, -um, *adj.*, high, deep.

ā-mentia, -ae, *f.*, madness.

amīcitia, -ae, *f.*, friendship.

amīcus, -a, -um, *adj.*, friendly; *noun*, friend.

ā-mitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, lose.

amor, -ōris, *m.*, love.

amplius, *comp. adv.*, more; *sup.*, amplissime, most liberally.

amplus, -a, -um, *adj.*, large, distinguished.

an, *conj.* (*introducing second part of alternative question*), or.

an-ceps, -cipitis, *adj.*, twofold, double.

angustiae, -arum, *f. plur.*, narrowness, narrow passage, defile.

angustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow.
anim-ad-verto, -ere, -ti, -sum, *v. a.* (*or* animum adverto), notice, observe; *animadvertere in*, punish.
animus, -i, *m.*, mind, spirit, disposition; *esp. in plur.*, courage; *mihi in animo est*, I intend.
annus, -i, *m.*, year.
annuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, yearly, for a year.
ante, *prep. with acc.*, before; *adv.*, before, formerly.
anteā, *adv.*, before, formerly.
antīquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ancient.
a-pertus, -a, -um, *adj.*, exposed.
ap-pello, 1 *v. a.*, call by name, style, address.
ap-peto, -ere, -ii *or* -īvi, -ītum, *v. a.*, strive after.
Aprīlis, -e, *adj.*, of April.
apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, with, among, in presence of.
ar-bitrium, -i, *n.*, will, judgment.
ar-bitror, 1 *v. dep.*, think, consider.
ar-cesso, -ere, -īvi, -ītum, *v. a.*, send for, summon.
arma, -orum, *n. plur.*, arms, weapons.
armo, 1 *v. a.*, arm, equip.
ar-roganter, *adv.*, presumptuously.
ar-rogantia, -ae, *f.*, presumptuousness.
arx, arcis, *f.*, citadel, fortress.
a-scendo, -ere, -di, -sum, *v.a.*, mount, climb.
a-scensus, -ūs, *m.*, ascent.
at, *conj.*, but, at least.
atque, *conj.* (*also* ac, *but not before vowels*), and, and even, as, than.
at-tingo, -ere, -tigi, -tactum, *v. a.*, border on, reach.
auctōritās, -atis, *f.*, influence.
auctus, -a, -um, *part. as adj.*, increased, distinguished.
audācia, -ae, *f.*, boldness.
audacter, *adv.*, boldly; *comp.* audacius.
audeo, -ēre, ausus, *v. n. semi-dep.*, dare.
audio, 4 *v. a.*, hear. *See* dictum.
augeo, -ēre, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, increase, augment.
aut, *conj.*, or; *aut . . . aut*, either . . . or.
autem, *conj.*, but, indeed, moreover.
auxilium, -i, *n.*, help, aid; *plur.*, auxiliary forces.
avāritia, -ae, *f.*, covetousness.
a-verto, -ere, -ti, -sum, *v. a.*, turn away, aside, alienate; *aversus hostis*, an enemy with his back turned, i. e. running away.
avus, -i, *m.*, grandfather.

barbarus, -a, -um, *adj.*, foreign, barbarian; *noun*, foreigner, savage.
bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, warlike.
bello, 1 *v.n.*, make war, fight.
bellum, -i, *n.*, war.
bene-ficium, -i, *n.*, kindness, favour.
bī-duum, -i, *n.*, (*space of*) two days.
bi-ennium, -i, *n.*, (*space of*) two years.

bi-partītō, *adv.*, in two divisions.
bonitās, -ātis, *f.*, goodness, richness.
bonum, -i, *n.*, good, advantage.
bonus, -a, -um, *adj.*, good; *bono esse animo*, be well-disposed.
bracchium, -i, *n.*, arm.
brevis, -e, *adj.*, short.

cado, -ere, cecidi, cāsum, *v.n.*, fall.
calamitās, -ātis, *f.*, disaster.
capio, -ere, cēpi, captum, *v.a.*, take, take up, occupy, mislead.
captīvus, -i, *m.*, prisoner.
caput, -itis, *n.*, head, person.
carrus, -i, *m.*, cart, wagon.
castellum, -i, *n.*, fortress, redoubt.
castra, -orum, *n.*, camp (*but* castrum, a fort); *castra ponere*, pitch a camp; *castra movere*, strike camp.
cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, chance, accident.
catēna, -ae, *f.* (*usually in plur.*), chain, fetter.
causa, -ae, *f.*, cause, pretext; *abl.*, for the sake of; *causam dicere*, stand one's trial.
caveo, -ēre, cāvi, cautum, *v. n.*, be on one's guard.
celeritās, -ātis, *f.* (celer), swiftness, speed.
celeriter, *adv.*, quickly; *comp.* celerius.
censeo, -ēre, -ui, censum, *v. a.*, decree.
census, -ūs, *m.*, numbering.
centum, *indecl. num.*, a hundred.
centurio, -ōnis, *m.*, centurion; *see* Introduction.
certus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fixed, certain, definite; *certiorem facere*, inform; *certior fieri*, be informed.
cēteri, -ae, -a, *adj.*, the rest.
cibārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, pertaining to food; *n. plur. as noun*, provisions.
cingo, -ere, -nxi, -nctum, *v. a.*, surround.
circinus, -i, *m.*, pair of compasses.
circiter, *adv.*, thereabouts; *rarely as prep.*, about.
circuitus, -ūs, *m.*, going round, circuit.
circum, *prep. with acc., and adv.*, round, about.
circum-do, -dare, -dedi, -datum, *v. a.*, put round, surround.
circum-dūco, 3 *v. a.*, put round, draw round.
circum-sisto, -ere, -steti, *v.a.*, stand round, surround.
circum-venio, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, *v. a.*, come round, entrap, turn the flank.
citerior, -us, *comp. adj.*, nearer, hither.
cĭtrā, *prep. with acc.*, on this side of.
cĭtrō, *adv.*, hither; *ultro citroque*, backwards and forwards.
cīvitās, -ātis, *f.*, citizenship, state.
claudo, -ere, -si, -sum, *v. a.*, shut; *claudere agmen*, bring up the rear.
cliens, -ntis, *c.*, dependant, retainer.

co-emo, -ere, -ēmi, -emptum, *v. a.*, buy up.

coepi, -isse, *p. p.* coeptus, *v. def.* (*perf. with present meaning*), begin.

co-erceo, 2 *v. a.*, restrain, keep back.

cōgito, 1 *v. a.*, reflect, think over.

co-gnosco, -ere, -nōvi, -nitum, *v. a.*, ascertain, inquire into, discover.

cō-go, -ere, coēgi, coactum, *v. a.*, bring together, compel.

cohors, -rtis, *f.*, cohort (*the tenth part of a legion*).

co-hortor, 1 *v. dep.*, encourage, harangue.

col-ligo, 1 *v. a.*, fasten together.

collis, -is, *m.*, hill.

col-loco, 1 *v. a.*, place together, station; *collocare in matrimonium*, give in marriage.

col-loquium, -i, *n.*, conference, interview.

col-loquor, -i, -locūtus, *v. dep.*, converse with, confer together.

com-būro, -ere, -ussi, -ustum, *v. a.*, burn up.

com-meātus, -ūs, *m.*, supplies, commissariat.

com-memoro, 1 *v. a.*, mention, call to mind, relate.

com-meo, 1 *v. n.*, go to and fro, travel.

com-minus, *adv.*, hand to hand.

com-mitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, join, commit, do wrong, allow; *committere ut*, give occasion that.

com-modē, *adv.*, advantageously.

com-modum, -i, *n.*, advantage.

com-modus, -a, -um, *adj.*, favourable.

com-monē-facio, -ere, -fēci, -factum, *v. a.*, remind.

com-moveo, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtūm, *v. a.*, agitate, move strongly, disquiet.

com-mūnio, 4 *v. a.*, entrench strongly; *communire castella*, place strong redoubts.

com-mūnis, -e, *adj.*, general, common; *communis consensus*, unanimous resolution.

com-mūtātio, -ōnis, *f.*, change.

com-mūto, 1 *v. a.*, alter, exchange.

com-paro, 1 *v. a.*, prepare, get together, amass, compare.

com-perio, -ire, -peri, -pertum, *v. a.*, ascertain.

com-plector, -i, -plexus, *v. dep.*, embrace.

com-pleo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *v. a.*, fill up.

com-plūres, -a, *adj.*, several, many.

com-porto, 1 *v. a.*, bring together, bring.

cōnātum, -i, *n.*, attempt.

cōnātus, -ūs, *m.*, attempt.

con-cēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. a.*, yield, grant, allow, permit.

con-cīdo, -ere, -cīdi, -cīsum, *v. a.*, cut to pieces, kill.

con-cilio, 1 *v. a.*, win over, procure.

con-cilium, -i, *n.*, meeting, council.

con-clāmo, I *v. n.*, shout aloud, bawl.

con-curro, -ere, -curri *or* -cucurri, -cursum, *v. n.*, run together, make a rush.

con-cursus, -ūs, *m.*, running together, rush, charge.

con-dicio, -ōnis, *f.*, state, terms.

con-dōno, I *v. a.*, pardon.

con-dūco, 3 *v. a.*, bring together, hire.

con-fero, -ferre, -tuli, collātum, *v. a.*, collect, compare, attribute, defer; *se conferre*, betake oneself.

con-fertus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*p. p. p. of* confercio), crowded together.

con-ficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, *v. a.*, accomplish, draw up, conclude.

con-fīdo, -ere, -fīsus, *v. n. semi-dep.*, trust, rely on.

con-firmo, I *v. a.*, strengthen, ratify, encourage, assure.

con-gredior, -i, -gressus, *v. dep.*, meet in battle, engage with.

cōn-icio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, *v. a.*, hurl, throw.

con-iungo, -ere, -nxi, -nctum, *v. a.*, join.

cōn-iūratio, -ōnis, *f.*, conspiracy, league.

cōnor, I *v. dep.*, try, attempt.

con-quīro, -ere, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum, *v. a.*, inquire for, seek out.

con-sanguineus, -a, -um, *adj.*, related by blood; *noun*, kinsman.

con-scisco, -ere, -īvi, -ītum, *v. a.*, resolve on; *consciscere sibi mortem*, commit suicide.

con-scius, -a, -um, *adj.*, aware of, conscious.

con-scrībo, -ere, -psi, -ptum, *v. a.*, enrol.

con-sensus, -ūs, *m.*, agreement.

con-sequor, -i, -secūtus, *v. dep.*, pursue, obtain.

con-sīdo, -ere, -sēdi, -sessum, *v. n.*, take position, settle.

con-silium, -i, *n.*, plan, policy, council.

con-sisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, *v. n.*, take one's stand, halt.

con-sōlor, I *v. dep.*, comfort.

con-spectus, -ūs, *m.*, sight.

con-spicio, -ere, -exi, -ectum, *v. a.*, catch sight of.

con-spicor, I *v. dep.*, espy, descry.

con-stantia, -ae, *f.*, firmness, resolution.

con-stituo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *v. a.*, draw up, settle, arrange.

con-suesco, -ere, -suēvi, -suētum, *v. n.*, become accustomed; *perf.*, be accustomed.

con-suētūdo, -inis, *f.*, custom, practice.

con-sul, -ulis, *m.*, consul.

con-sulātus, -ūs, *m.*, office of consul, consulship.

consulo, -ere, -lui, -ltum, *v. a.*, consult, take counsel.

consultum, -i, *n.*, resolution, decree.

con-sūmo, -ere, -psi, -ptum, *v. a.*, use up, destroy.

con-tendo, -ere, -di, -tum, *v. n.*, strive, hasten, fight.

con-tentio, -ōnis, *f.*, contest.

con-tinenter, *adv.*, continuously.

con-tineo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, *v. a.*, hold back, restrain, bound, hem in, fill up.
con-tingo, -ere, -tigi, -tactum, *v. a. and n.*, extend to, happen.
con-tinuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, in succession.
contrā, *prep. with acc.*, against; *adv.*, on the other hand, in reply.
con-traho, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, bring together, collect.
con-tumēlia, -ae, *f.*, insult.
con-venio, -ire, -vēni, -ventum, *v. n.*, meet; *convenit*, it is agreed.
con-ventus, -ūs, *m.*, meeting; *pl.*, assizes.
con-verto, -ere, -ti, -sum, *v. a.*, turn, wheel.
con-vinco, -ere, -vīci, -victum, *v. a.*, prove against.
con-voco, I *v. a.*, call together, summon.
cōpia, -ae, *f.*, abundance, supply; *pl.* (*usually*), forces.
cōpiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, plentiful, well-supplied.
cōram, *adv.*, in person.
cornu, -ūs, *n.*, horn, wing (*of army*).
corpus, -oris, *n.*, body.
cotīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, daily, ordinary.
cotīdiē, *adv.*, daily.
cremo, I *v. a.*, burn.
creo, I *v. a.*, appoint, elect.
cresco, -ere, crēvi, crētum, *v. n.*, increase, grow great.
cruciātus, -ūs, *m.*, torture.
crūdēlitās, -ātis, *f.*, cruelty.
crūdēliter, *adv.*, cruelly.
cultus, -ūs, *m.*, civilization, mode of life.
cum (1) *prep. with abl.*, with; (2) *conj.*, when, since, though; *cum . . . tum*, both . . . and.
cupidē, *adv.*, eagerly.
cupiditās, -ātis, *f.*, desire, greed, ambition.
cupidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, eager for.
cupio, -ere, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, *v. a.*, wish, desire; *with dat.*, wish well to.
cūr, *adv.*, why?
cūra, -ae, *f.*, care, anxiety.
cūro, I *v. a.*, take care; *with gerundive*, have (*a thing*) done.
cursus, -ūs, *m.*, running, speed.
custōs, -ōdis, *c.*, guard.

damno, I *v. a.*, condemn.
dē, *prep. with abl.*, from, concerning, out of, about, in course of.
dēbeo, 2 *v. a.*, owe, ought.
dē-cēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. n.*, depart, withdraw.
decem, *indecl. num.*, ten.
dē-certo, I *v. n.*, fight it out, fight.
dē-cido, -ere, -cidi, *v. n.*, fall down.
decimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, tenth.
dē-cipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *v. a.*, deceive.
dē-clāro, I *v. a.*, announce.
decurio, -ōnis, *m.*, decurion; *see* Introduction.
dē-diticius, -i, *m.*, one who has surrendered, prisoner of war.

dē-ditio, -ōnis, *f.*, surrender.
dē-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *v. a.*, give up, surrender.
dē-dūco, 3 *v. a.*, lead away, withdraw.
dē-fatīgo, 1 *v. a.*, tire out.
dē-fendo, -ere, -di, -sum, *v. a.*, defend, ward off.
dē-fetiscor, -i, -fessus, *v. dep.*, grow weary; *part.*, tired out.
dē-icio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, *v. a.*, throw down, disappoint.
de-inde, *adv.*, afterwards.
dē-lībero, 1 *v. n.*, consider.
dē-ligo, *v. a.*, bind down, fasten.
dē-ligo, -ere, -lēgi, -lectum, *v. a.*, choose, select.
dē-minuo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *v. a.*, lessen.
dē-mitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, let down; *capite demisso*, with downcast head.
dē-monstro, 1 *v. a.*, show.
dēmum, *adv.*, at length.
dē-nego, 1 *v. a.*, refuse.
dēni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*, ten each.
dēnique, *adv.*, at length.
dē-nuntio, 1 *v. a.*, threaten.
dē-perdo, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *v. a.*, lose utterly.
dē-pōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, *v. a.*, lay aside.
dē-populor, 1 *v. dep.*, lay waste.
dē-precātor, -ōris, *m.*, pleader, intercessor.
dē-sero, -ere, -serui, -sertum, *v. a.*, forsake.
dē-signo, 1 *v. a.*, point out *or* to.
dē-sisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, *v. n.*, cease.
dē-spēro, 1 *v. n.*, despair.
dē-spicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, *v. a.*, look down on, despise.
dē-stituo, -ere, -ui, -utum, *v. a.*, abandon, deprive.
dē-stringo, -ere, -strinxi, -strictum, *v. a.*, draw.
dē-sum, -esse, -fui, *v. n.*, fail.
dē-super, *adv.*, from above.
dēterior, -us, *comp. adj.*, worse; *deteriorem facere*, diminish.
dē-terreo, 2 *v. a.*, frighten off, prevent.
dē-traho, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, withdraw.
dē-trī-mentum, -i, *n.*, injury.
deus, -i, *m.*, god.
dē-veho, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, carry away, carry down.
dexter, -tra, -trum (-tera, -terum), *adj.*, right; *dextra* (sc. *manus*), the right hand.
dicio, -ōnis, *f.*, sway, rule.
dīco, 3 *v. a.*, say, speak, name; *causam dicere*, stand one's trial.
dictio, -ōnis, *f.*, pleading, trial.
dictum, -i, *n.*, order; *dicto audiens*, obedient.
diēs, -ēi (*c. in sing.*, *m. in pl.*), day.
dif-fero, -ferre, distuli, dīlātum, *v. a.*, postpone, differ.
dif-ficilis, -e, *adj.*, hard, difficult.
dignitās, -atis, *f.*, dignity.

dīligentia, -ae, *f.*, carefulness.
dī-mitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, send away.
dir-imo, -ere, -ēmi, -emptum, *v. a.*, break off, interrupt.
dis-cēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. n.*, go away, quit.
disciplīna, -ae, *f.*, discipline.
disco, -ere, didici, *v. a.*, learn.
dīs-icio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, *v. a.*, scatter.
di-spergo, -ere, -si, -sum, *v. a.*, scatter, disperse.
dis-pōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, *v. a.*, station (*at intervals*).
dītissimus, *superl. of* dīves (q. v.)
diū, *adv.*, for a long time; *comp.* diutius.
diurnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, by day.
diuturnitās, -ātis, *f.*, length of time, long continuance.
diuturnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long, lasting.
dīves, -itis, *adj.* (*sup.* divitissimus *and* ditissimus), rich.
dī-vido, -ere, -vīsi, -vīsum, *v. a.*, divide.
do, dare, dedi, datum, *v. a.*, give; *inter se dare*, exchange.
doceo, -ēre, -ui, -tum, *v. a.*, teach, show.
doleo, 2 *v. n.*, be pained, grieve.
dolor, -ōris, *m.*, sorrow, pain, indignation.
dolus, -i, *m.*, treachery.
domicilium, -i, *n.*, dwelling.
domus, -ūs, *f.*, house; *domum*, home(wards); *domi*, at home.
dōno, 1 *v. a.*, present with, give.
dubitātio, -ōnis, *f.*, doubt, hesitation.
dubito, 1 *v. n.*, doubt, hesitate.
dubius, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful.
du-centi, -ae, -a, *adj.*, two hundred.
dūco, 3 *v. a.*, lead, think, prolong, delay; *uxorem ducere*, marry.
dum, *conj.*, *with indic.*, while; *with subj.*, till.
duo, -ae, -o, *num. adj.*, two.
duo-decim, *indecl. num. adj.*, twelve.
dūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, difficult, severe.
dux, ducis, *c.*, leader, guide.

ē, **ex**, *prep. with abl.*, out of, from, in accordance with; *una ex parte*, on one side; *ex vinculis*, in chains; *ex equo*, on horseback.
ē-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *v. a.*, put out, produce, commit.
ē-dūco, 3 *v. a.*, lead out.
ef-fēmino, 1 *v. a.*, enervate.
ef-fero, -ferre, ex-tuli, ē-lātum, *v. a.*, publish, make known.
ef-ficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, *v. a.*, make, cause.
ego, mei, *pron.*, I.
ē-gredior, -i, -gressus, *v. dep.*, go beyond, pass, leave.
ē-gregius, -a, -um, *adj.*, conspicuous, remarkable.
ē-migro, *v. n.*, depart from, emigrate.
ē-mitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, send out, throw away.

emo, -ere, ēmi, emptum, *v. a.*, buy.
enim, *conj.*, for.
ē-nuntio, 1 *v. a.*, disclose, publish.
eō, *adv.*, thither, on this account.
eo, īre, īvi or ii, itum, *v. n.*, go.
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place *or* end.
eques, -itis, *m.*, horseman; *pl.*, cavalry.
equester, -tris -e, *adj.*, cavalry.
equitātus, -ūs, *m.*, (*body of*) cavalry.
equus, -i, *m.*, horse; *ex equis*, on horseback.
ē-ripio, -ere, -ripui, -reptum, *v. a.*, snatch away, rescue.
et, *conj.*, and, also; *et . . . et*, both . . . and.
etiam, *conj.*, also, even; *quin etiam*, nay, more.
etiam-sī, *conj.*, even if.
et-sī, *conj.*, even if, although.
ē-vello, -ere, -velli, -vulsum, *v. a.*, pull out.
ex. *See* e.
ex-cipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *v. a.*, take, receive, sustain.
ex-emplum, -i, *n.*, example, kind, severity (ch. xxxi).
ex-eo, -īre, -ii, -itum, *v. n.*, go out, leave.
ex-erceo, 2 *v. a.*, practise, drill.
ex-ercitātio, -ōnis, *f.*, practice.
ex-ercitātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, trained, skilled.
ex-ercitus, -ūs, *m.* (*lit.* a trained body), army.
ex-istimātio, -ōnis, *f.*, opinion; *existimatio vulgi*, public opinion.
ex-istimo, 1 *v. a.*, think, deem.
ex-pecto, 1 *v. a.*, await, expect.
ex-pedītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, without baggage, unencumbered, easy, convenient.
ex-perior, -īri, -pertus, *v. dep.*, try, prove, undergo.
ex-plōrātor, -ōris, *m.*, scout.
ex-primo, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, *v. a.*, extort, force out.
ex-pugno, 1 *v. a.*, storm, take by storm.
ex-quīro, -ere, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum, *v. a.*, search out, ascertain.
ex-sequor, -i, -secūtus, *v. dep.*, follow out, make good.
extrā, *prep. with acc.*, outside.
extrēmus, -a, -um, *sup. adj.*, last, furthest.
ex-ūro, -ere, -ussi, -ustum, *v. a.*, burn up.

facile, *adv.*, easily.
facilis, -e, *adj.*, easy.
facinus, -oris, *n.*, crime.
facio, -ere, fēci, factum, *v. a.*, do, make; *facere copiam*, supply.
factio, -ōnis, *f.*, party, faction.
factum, -i, *n.*, deed, act, action.
facultās, -ātis, *f.*, power, opportunity, leave, store; *pl.* resources.
fames, -is, *f.*, hunger.

familia, -ae, *f.*, household, family.
familiāris, -e, *adj.*, domestic; (*as noun*) intimate, friend; *res familiaris*, private property.
fās, *indecl. n.*, the will of the gods.
fātum, -i, *n.*, fate, destiny.
faveo, -ēre, fāvi, fautum, *v. n.*, favour.
fēlīcitās, -ātis, *f.*, success, good fortune.
ferē, *adv.*, nearly, for the most part.
fero, ferre, tuli, lātum, *v. a.*, bear, bring, endure; *graviter ferre*, be vexed.
ferrum, -i, *n.* (*no pl.*), iron, javelin.
ferus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fierce, savage, wild.
fidēs, -ei, *f.*, faith, pledge, trustworthiness, loyalty; *fidem habere* (*with dat.*), to place confidence in.
fīlia, -ae, *f.*, daughter.
fīlius, -i, *m.*, son.
fingo, -ere, -nxi, fictum, *v. a.*, form, fashion, compose.
fīnis, -is, *m.* (*sometimes f.*), end; *pl.*, territories.
fīnitimus, -a, -um, *adj.*, neighbouring.
fīo, fieri, factus, *v. n.* (*pass. of* facio), be made, become; *fit ut* (*with subj.*), the result is that.
firmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, strong, firm.
flāgito, I *v. a.*, demand, press for.
fleo, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *v. n.*, weep.
flētus, -ūs, *m.*, weeping, tears.
flōrens, -tis, *adj.*, flourishing, prosperous.
flūmen, -inis, *n.*, river.
fluo, -ere, -xi, -xum, *v. n.*, flow.
fore, *fut. inf. of* sum.
fortis, -e, *adj.*, brave.
fortitūdo, -inis, *f.*, bravery, courage.
fortūna, -ae, *f.*, fortune; *pl.*, property.
fossa, -ae, *f.*, ditch.
frango, -ere, frēgi, fractum, *v. a.*, break, ruin.
frāter, -tris, *m.*, brother.
frāternus, -a, -um, *adj.*, brotherly; *amor frāternus*, love for one's brother.
frīgus, -oris, *n.*, cold.
fructuōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fruitful.
fructus, -ūs, *m.*, fruit.
frūgem, -is, *f.* (*no nom.*), fruit, crop.
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, corn-producing; *res frūmentāria*, corn-supply, provisions.
frūmentum, -i, *n.*, corn; *pl.*, corn-crops.
fuga, -ae, *f.*, flight.
fugio, -ere, fūgi, fugitum, *v. n.*, flee.
fugitīvus, -i, *m.*, runaway slave.
fundo, -ere, fūdi, fūsum, *v. a.*, rout.
furor, -ōris, *m.*, rage, madness.

generātim, *adv.*, according to tribes.
genus, -eris, *n.*, race, kind, stock.

gero, -ere, gessi, gestum, *v. a.*, do, carry on, wage.
gladius, -i, *m.*, sword.
glōria, -ae, *f.*, glory, fame.
glōrior, 1 *v. dep.*, boast.
grandis, -e, *adj.*, large.
grātia, -ae, *f.*, influence, popularity, favour; *pl.*, thanks; *abl.*, *gratiā*, for the sake of.
grātulātio, -ōnis, *f.*, cause for rejoicing.
grātulor, 1 *v. dep.*, congratulate.
grātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing.
gravis, -e, *adj.*, heavy, serious.
graviter, *adv.*, severely, vehemently; *graviter ferre*, to be vexed.
gravor, 1 *v. dep.*, be annoyed, object.

habeo, 2 *v. a.*, have, hold, consider; *habere orationem*, deliver a speech; *habere in loco, numero*, treat as.
hīberna, -orum, *n.* (*sc. castra*), winter-quarters.
hĭc, haec, hōc, *adj. and pron.*, this.
hīc, *adv.*, here.
hiemo, 1 *v. n.*, winter.
homo, -inis, *c.*, human being, person; *m.*, man.
honestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, honourable.
honor, -ōris, *m.*, distinction, office, honour.
honōri-ficus, -a, -um, *adj.*, honourable.
hōra, -ae, *f.*, hour.
horreo, -ēre, -ui, *v. n. and a.*, shudder, be frightened at.
hortor, 1 *v. dep.*, urge, encourage.
hospes, -itis, *m.*, guest-friend.
hospitium, -i, *n.*, hospitality, the friendship between host and guest.
hostis, -is, *c.*, enemy.
hūc, *adv.*, hither, here.
hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.*, civilization, culture.

iacto, 1 *v. a.*, discuss.
iam, *adv.*, by this time, already, now.
ibĭ, *adv.*, there.
ictus, -ūs, *m.*, blow, stroke.
īdem, eadem, idem, *adj. and pron.*, the same.
idōneus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable, fit.
Īdūs, -uum, *f.*, the Ides, the 13th of the month; in March, May, July, October, the 15th.
ignis, -is, *f.* (*abl. igni* or *e*), fire.
i-gnōro, 1 *v. a.*, be ignorant of, not know.
i-gnosco, -ere, -ōvi, -ōtum, *v. a.*, pardon, forgive.
ille, -a, -ud, *adj. and pron.*, that, he, she, it.
illīc, *adv.*, there.
im-mortālis, -e, *adj.*, immortal.
im-pedīmentum, -i, *n.*, hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.
im-pedio, 4 *v. a.*, hinder; *impedītum iter*, a difficult route.
im-pello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, *v. a.*, urge on, instigate.
im-pendeo, -ēre (*no perf. or sup.*), *v. n.*, hang over.

im-perātor, -ōris, *m.*, commander (in-chief).

im-perītus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*with gen.*), unskilled in.

im-perium, -i, *n.*, supreme power, command.

im-pero, 1 *v. a.*, order, levy from.

im-petro, 1 *v. a.*, get, obtain request.

im-petus, -ūs, *m.*, attack, violence.

im-plōro, 1 *v. a.*, beseech, entreat.

im-pōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, *v. a.*, put on, impose.

im-porto, 1 *v. a.*, bring into, import.

imprīmis, *adv.*, especially.

im-probus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad, unscrupulous.

im-prō-vīsō, *adv.*, unexpectedly.

im-pugno, 1 *v. a.*, attack.

im-pūne, *adv.*, with impunity.

im-pūnitās, -ātis, *f.*, impunity, freedom from punishment.

in, *prep. with abl.*, in, on, upon; *with acc.*, into, against, towards.

in-cendo, -ere, -di, -sum, 3 *v. a.*, set on fire, burn.

in-cido, -ere, -cidi, -cāsum, *v. n.*, fall in with, come upon.

in-cito, 1 *v. a.*, incite, rouse.

in-colo, -ere, -ui, *v. a. and n.*, inhabit, live.

in-columis, -e, *adj.*, unhurt, safe.

in-commodum, -i, *n.*, trouble, disaster.

in-crēdibilis, -e, *adj.*, incredible.

in-cūso, 1 *v. a.*, reproach, blame.

in-de, *adv.*, thence, then, after that.

in-dicium, -i, *n.*, information.

in-dīco, 3 *v. a.*, declare, proclaim.

in-dūco, 3 *v. a.*, urge on, excite.

in-dulgeo, -ēre, -si, -tum, *v. a.*, indulge, favour.

in-ermus, -a, -um, *or* **inermis**, -e, *adj.*, unarmed.

inferior, -us, *comp. adj.*, lower.

in-fero, -ferre, -tuli, illātum, *v. a.*, bring against, assign, inflict; *inferre signa*, charge.

in-flecto, -ere, -xi, -xum, *v. a.*, bend.

in-fluo, -ere, -xi, -xum, *v. n.*, flow into.

ingens, -ntis, *adj.*, huge, vast.

īn-icio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, 3 *v. a.*, inspire.

in-imīcus, -a, -um, *adj.*, hostile; *as noun*, foe.

in-īquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unjust, unfavourable.

in-itium, -i, *n.*, beginning.

īn-iūria, -ae, *f.*, injury, wrong-doing; *abl. as adv.*, wrongfully.

in-iussu (*only in abl.*), without orders.

in-nascor, -i, -nātus, *v. dep.*, be born, spring up.

in-nocentia, -ae, *f.* cleanhandedness, integrity.

in-opia, -ae, *f.*, want.

in-opīnans, -ntis, *adj.*, not

expecting, off one's guard.

in-quīro, -ere, -quīsīvi, -quīsītum, *v. a.*, inquire.

in-sciens, -ntis, *adj.*, unaware, not knowing.

in-sequor, -secūtus, *v. dep.*, follow up, pursue.

in-sidiae, -arum, *f. pl.*, ambuscade, treachery.

in-signe, -is, *n.*, standard, ensign; *pl.*, accoutrements.

in-signis, -e, *adj.*, remarkable, signal.

in-silio, -īre, -ui, *v. n.*, leap on.

in-solenter, *adv.*, insolently.

in-stituo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *v. a.*, train, instruct.

in-stitūtum, -i, *n.*, custom, practice.

in-sto, -are, -stiti, -stātum, *v. n.*, press forward, be near.

in-struo, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, draw up.

intel-lego, 3 *v. a.*, understand, perceive.

inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, among; *inter se*, to *or* from each other, mutually.

inter-cēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. n.*, intervene, exist between.

inter-clūdo, -ere, -si, -sum, *v. a.*, cut off.

inter-dīco, 3 *v. a.*, forbid use of, banish.

inter-diū, *adv.*, by day.

inter-dum, *adv.*, sometimes.

inter-eā, *adv.*, meanwhile.

inter-ficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, *v. a.*, kill.

inter-im, *adv.*, meanwhile.

inter-mitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, leave off, interrupt; *pass.*, intervene, elapse.

inter-necio, -ōnis, *f.*, annihilation.

inter-pello, I *v. a.*, interfere, intrude oneself.

inter-pōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, *v. a.*, interpose, allege.

inter-pres, -etis, *c.*, interpreter.

inter-sum, -esse, -fui, *v. n.*, intervene, be between.

inter-vallum, -i, *n.*, interval, distance.

intrā, *prep. with acc.*, within.

in-tueor, -ēri, -itus, *v. dep.*, look on.

in-venio, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, *v. a.*, find.

in-victus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unconquered, invincible.

in-vīto, I *v. a.*, invite.

invītus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unwilling.

ipse, -a, -um, *pron.*, self.

īrācundus, -a, -um, *adj.*, passionate.

ir-rīdiculē, *adv.*, without wit.

is, ea, id, *adj.*, that; *pron.*, he, she, it, such; *eo quod*, for the reason that.

ita, *adv.*, so, thus.

itaque, *conj.*, and so, therefore.

item, *adv.*, also, likewise.

iter, itineris, *n.*, march, road.

iterum, *adv.*, a second time, again.

iuba, -ae, *f.*, mane.

iubeo, -ēre, iussi, iussum, *v. a.*, order, bid.
iūdicium, -i, *n.*, judgment, decision.
iūdico, I *v. a. and n.*, judge, decide, determine.
iugum, -i, *n.*, yoke, ridge.
iūmentum, -i, *n.*, beast of burden.
iungo, -ere, -nxi, -nctum, *v. a.*, join.
iūro, I *v. n.*, swear, take an oath.
iūs, iūris, *n.*, right, authority, law.
iūs-iūrandum, iūris-iūrandi, *n.*, oath.
iustitia, -ae, *f.*, justice.
iustus, -a, -um, *adj.*, just, fair.
iuvo, -are, iūvi, iūtum, *v. a.*, help.

Kalendae, -arum, *f. pl.*, Calends, the first of the month.

labor, -ōris, *m.*, toil, labour.
labōro, I *v. n.*, toil, be in difficulties.
lacesso, -ere, -īvi, -ītum, *v. a.*, harass, attack.
lăcrima, -ae, *f.*, tear.
lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake.
lapis, -idis, *m.*, stone.
largior, 4 *v. dep.*, bribe.
largiter, *adv.*, widely; *largiter posse*, to have wide influence.
largītio, -ōnis, *f.*, prodigality, bribery.
lātē, *adv.*, widely, far and wide.
lātitūdo, -inis, *f.*, width, breadth.
lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wide, broad.
latus, -eris, *n.*, side, flank.
laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, renown.
lēgātio, -ōnis, *f.*, embassy.
lēgātus, -i, *m.*, envoy, ambassador, lieutenant.
legio, -ōnis, *f.*, legion; *see* Introduction, § iv.
legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, legionary, belonging to the legion. *Also as noun.*
lēnitās, -ātis, *f.*, gentleness, sluggishness.
lex, lēgis, *f.*, law, public declaration (ch. iii).
libenter, *adv.*, willingly.
līber, -era, -erum, *adj.*, free.
līberālitās, -ātis, *f.*, generosity.
līberē, *adv.*, freely.
līberi, -orum, *m. pl.*, children.
lībertās, -ātis, *f.*, freedom.
liceor, -ēri, -itus, *v. dep.*, bid (*at auction*).
licet, -ēre, licuit, *v. impers.*, it is allowed, lawful.
lingua, -ae, *f.*, tongue, language.
linter, -tris, *f.*, boat.
littera, -ae, *f.*, *sing.*, letter (*of alphabet*); *pl.*, letter, epistle.
locus, -i, *m.* (*pl.*, loca; loci *in special senses*), place, ground, opportunity; *eodem loco habere*, to hold in the same light.
longē, *adv.*, far, far off.
longinquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, distant, long (*of time*).
longitūdo, -inis, *f.*, length.
longus, -a, -um, *adj.*, long,

distant; *in longiorem diem*, till a later day.
loquor, -i, locūtus, *v. dep.*, speak, talk.
lūna, -ae, *f.*, moon.
lux, lūcis, *f.*, light; *prima luce*, at daybreak.

magis, *adv.* (*comp. of* magnopere), more.
magistrātus, -ūs, *m.*, magistrate, magistracy.
magnitūdo, -inis, *f.*, greatness, size.
magnopere *or* **magno opere**, *adv.*, greatly.
magnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, great.
māior, -us, *adj.* (*comp. of* magnus), greater; *pl.*, maiōres, *as noun*, ancestors.
male, *adv.*, badly.
maleficium, -i, *n.*, mischief, damage.
malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad; malum, *n.*, *as noun*, evil.
mandātum, -i, *n.*, instruction, message.
mando, 1 *v. a.*, commission, command; *fugae se mandare*, take to flight.
maneo, -ēre, mansi, mansum, *v. n.*, remain, hold to.
manus, -ūs, *f.*, hand, body (*of troops*).
matara, -ae, *f.*, pike.
māter, -tris, *f.*, mother; *materfamilias*, matron.
mātrimōnium, -i, *n.*, marriage.
mātūrē, *adv.*, early; *comp.*, maturius; *sup.*, maturrime and maturissime.
mātūro, 1 *v. n.*, hasten.
mātūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ripe, early.
maximē, *adv.* (*sup. of* magnopere), very greatly.
maximus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*sup. of* magnus), greatest; *quam maximus*, as great as possible.
mediŏcriter, *adv.*, moderately.
medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle.
memoria, -ae, *f.*, memory, recollection; *memoria tenere*, to bear in mind.
mens, mentis, *f.*, mind. reason, feeling.
mensis, -is, *m.*, month.
mercātor, -ōris, *m.*, trader.
mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, pay, reward.
mereo, 2 *v. a.*, *or* mereor, -ēri, -itus, *dep.*, deserve, earn.
merīdies, -ēi, *m.*, mid-day.
meritum, -i, *n.*, desert, service; *meritō* (*adv.*), deservedly.
mētior, -īri, mensus, *v. dep.*, measure, deal out.
mīles, -itis, *m.*, soldier.
milia, -ium, *n. pl.*, thousands.
mīlitāris, -e, *adj.*, military; *res militaris*, the art of warfare.
mille, *indecl. adj.* (*sometimes noun, as in* XXV. 14), a thousand.
minimē, *adv.*, least, very little.
minimus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*sup. of* parvus), little.
minor, -us, *adj.* (*comp. of* parvus), less, smaller.
minuo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *v. a.*, lessen, diminish.
minus, *adv.*, less: *sometimes*

almost equals non, *as in* si minus (ch. xlvii).
mīror, I *v. dep.*, wonder, wonder at.
mīrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wonderful.
miser, -era, -erum, *adj.*, wretched.
miseror, I *v. dep.*, bewail, lament.
mitto, -ere, mīsi, missum, *v. a.*, send, hurl.
modo, *adv.*, only, lately.
modus, -i, *m.*, limit, method, manner; *mirum in modum*, in a wonderful manner.
mōlīmentum, -i, *n.*, exertion, effort.
molo, -ere, -ui, -itum, *v. a.*, grind.
moneo, 2 *v. a.*, warn, advise.
mons, -ntis, *m.*, mountain.
morior, mori, mortuus, *v. dep.*, die.
moror, I *v. dep.*, delay.
mors, mortis, *f.*, death.
mōs, mōris, *m.*, custom, practice.
moveo, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *v. a.*, move; *movere castra*, strike camp.
mulier, -eris, *f.*, woman.
multitūdo, -inis, *f.*, multitude, number.
multum, *adv.*, greatly.
multus, -a, -um, *adj.*, much; *pl.*, many; *multo die*, late in the day; *ad multam noctem*, till late at night.
mūnio, 4 *v. a.*, fortify.
mūnītio, -ōnis, *f.*, fortification.
mūnus, -eris, *n.*, gift.
mūrus, -i, *m.*, wall.

nam, *conj.*, for.
namque, *conj.*, for.
nanciscor, -i, nactus, *v. dep.*, get, obtain.
nātio, -ōnis, *f.*, nation.
nātūra, -ae, *f.*, nature, natural situation.
nāvicula, -ae, *f.*, boat, skiff.
nāvis -is, *f.*, ship; *navis longa*, war-ship.
nē, *conj.*, that . . . not, lest; *ne . . . quidem*, not even.
ne, *enclitic interrogative particle.*
nec. *See* neque.
necessāriō, *adv. of* necessity.
necessārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, urgent, critical, related; *as noun*, kinsman.
necessitūdo, -inis, *f.*, relationship, friendship.
nec-ne, *conj.* (*in indirect alternative questions*), or not.
neco, I *v. a.*, kill.
neg-lego, 3 *v. a.*, neglect, overlook.
nego, I *v. a.*, deny, say . . . not.
negōtium, -i, *n.*, business, affair.
nēmo (*gen.*, nullius; *abl.*, nullo), no one.
neque, *conj.*, and not, nor; *neque* (*nec*) . . . *neque* (*nec*), neither . . . nor.
nē-quīquam, *adv.*, in vain.
nervus, -i, *m.*, sinew, power.
neu *or* **nēve,** *conj.*, and not, nor.
nex, necis, *f.*, (*violent*) death.
nihil (nīl), *n. indecl.*, *or* nihilum, -i, *n.*, nothing; *nihilo minus*, none the less.
nīl. *See* nihil.
nisi, *conj.*, if not, unless.
nītor, -i, nisus *or* nixus,

v. dep., struggle, depend on.

nōbilis, -e, *adj.*, renowned, well-born; *noun*, noble.

nōbilitās, -ātis, *f.*, nobility; *collectively*, the nobility, nobles.

noctū, *adv.*, by night.

nocturnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, by night.

nōlo, nolle, nōlui, *v. irreg.*, be unwilling, refuse.

nōmen, -inis, *n.*, name, reputation; *nomine suo*, on his own account.

nōminātim, *adv.*, by name, in detail.

nōn, *adv.*, not.

nōnāgintā, *indecl. num.*, ninety.

non-dum, *adv.*, not yet.

non-nullus, -a, -um, *adj.*, some.

non-nunquam, *adv.*, sometimes.

noster, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, our, ours; *pl.*, our men, the Romans.

novem, *indecl. num.*, nine; *decem et novem*, nineteen.

novus, -a, -um, *adj.*, new; *novae res*, revolution; *novissimum agmen*, the rear; *so novissimi*.

nox, -ctis, *f.*, night; *ad multam noctem*, till late at night.

nūbo, -ere, -psi, -ptum, *v. n.* (*with dat.*), marry (*of the woman*; *lit.*, veil oneself for).

nūdus, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, exposed.

nullus, -a, -um (*gen.*, nullius), *adj.*, no more.

num, *interrog. part.* (*expecting answer* 'No').

numerus, -i, *m.*, number.

nunc, *adv.*, now.

nunquam, *adv.*, never.

nuntio, I *v. a.*, bring word, announce.

nuntius, -i, *m.*, messenger, news.

nūper, *adv.*, lately.

nūtus, -ūs, *m.*, nod; *ad nutum*, at one's pleasure.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of; *ob eam rem*, on that account.

ob-aerātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bond-slave, debtor.

ōb-icio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, *v. a.*, expose, put in way.

ob-līviscor, -i, -lītus, *v. dep.* (*usually with gen.*), forget.

ob-secro, I *v. a.*, beseech.

ob-servo, I *v. a.*, mark, observe.

ob-ses, -idis, *c.*, hostage.

ob-signo, I *v. a.*, seal.

ob-stringo, -ere, -nxi, -strictum, *v. a.*, bind, pledge.

ob-tineo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, *v. a.*, hold, occupy, maintain; *rarely*, acquire.

oc-cāsus, -ūs, *m.*, setting (*of sun*), west.

oc-cīdo, -ere, -cīdi, -cīsum, *v. a.*, kill.

oc-culto, I *v. a.*, hide.

oc-cultus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*p.p.p. of* occulo), hidden, secret.

oc-cupo, I *v. a.*, seize, occupy; *occupatus*, busy.

oc-curro, -ere, -i, -sum, *v. n.*, meet, oppose, prevent.

ōceanus, -i, *m.*, ocean.

octō, *indecl. num.*, eight.

octō-decim, *indecl. num.*, eighteen.
octō-gintā, *indecl. num.*, eighty.
oculus, -i, *m.*, eye.
ōdi, ōdisse (*perf. with pres. meaning*), hate.
of-fendo, -ere, -di, -sum, *v. a.*, offend, hurt.
of-fensio, -ōnis, *f.*, offence; *offensio animi*, hurting the feelings.
officium, -i, *n.*, duty, allegiance.
omnīno, *adv.*, altogether, at all.
omnis, -e, *adj.*, all, every.
opem (opis, ope), *f.*, help, aid; *plur.*, resources, wealth.
oportet, -ēre, -uit, *v. impers.*, it behoves, it is necessary.
oppidum, -i, *n.*, town, stronghold.
op-portūnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable, convenient.
op-primo, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, *v. a.*, crush.
op-pugno, 1 *v. a.*, attack.
optimē, *adv.* (*sup. of* bene), very well.
optimus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*sup. of* bonus), very good, best.
opus, -eris, *n.*, work, fortification.
opus, *n. indecl.*, need.
ōrātio, -ōnis, *f.*, speech; *orātionem habēre*, deliver a speech.
ordo, -inis, *m.*, order, rank, arrangement. *See note on* ch. xl. 2.
orior, -īri, ortus, *v. dep.*, rise, begin; *oriens* (*sol*), the East.
ornāmentum, -i, *n.*, adornment, honour.
ōro, 1 *v. a.*, beg, pray.
os-tendo, -ere, -di, -tum, *v. a.*, show, point out.

pābulātio, -ōnis, *f.*, foraging.
pābulum, -i, *n.*, fodder.
pāco, 1 *v. a.*, pacify, subdue.
paene, *adv.*, almost.
pāgus, -i, *m.*, canton, village.
palam, *adv.*, openly.
palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, marsh.
pando, -ere, -di, pansum *or* passum, *v. a.*, stretch, spread out; *passis manibus*, with outstretched hands.
pār, paris, *adj.*, equal, alike; *par . . . atque*, the same as.
pāreo, 2 *v. n.* (*with dat.*), obey.
paro, 1 *v. a.*, prepare, procure; (*p. p. p.*) *paratus*, ready, prepared.
pars, -rtis, *f.*, part, direction, respect; *magna ex parte*, to a great extent.
parvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, small, little.
passus, -ūs, *m.*, step, pace (*about* 5 *English feet*); *mille passus*, a (*Roman*) mile (*about* 1618 *English yards*).
pateo, -ēre, -ui, *v. n.*, lie open, extend.
pater, -tris, *m.*, father.
patior, pati, passus, *v. dep.*, suffer, allow, endure.
paucus, -a, -um, *adj. sing.*, small; *usually in pl.*, few.
paulātim, *adv.*, little by little, gradually.
paulō, *adv. with comparatives*, a little.
paulum, *adv.*, a little.
pax, pācis, *f.*, peace.

pecco, 1 *v. n.*, do wrong.
pedes, -itis, *m.*, footsoldier; *pl.*, infantry.
pēior, -us, *adj.* (*comp. of* malus), worse.
pello, -ere, pepuli, pulsum, *v. a.*, drive back, defeat.
pendo, -ere, pependi, pensum, *v. a.*, weigh, pay.
per, *prep. with acc.*, through, throughout, by means of.
per-contatio, -ōnis, *f.*, inquiry.
per-dūco, 3 *v. a.*, carry along.
per-eo, -ire, -ii *or* -ivi, -itum, *v. n.*, perish, be destroyed.
per-facilis, -e, *adj.*, very easy.
per-fero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *v. a.*, carry through, submit to.
per-ficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, *v. a.*, accomplish, complete.
per-fringo, -ere, -frēgi, -fractum, *v. a.*, break through.
per-fuga, -ae, *m.*, deserter.
per-fugio, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitum, *v. n.*, escape, desert.
perīculōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dangerous.
perīculum, -i, *n.*, danger, trial.
perītus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*with gen.*), skilled.
per-maneo, -ēre, -mansi, -mansum, *v. n.*, remain.
per-mitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, allow.
per-moveo, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *v. a.*, move deeply, prevail on.
per-niciēs, -ēi, *f.*, destruction, ruin.
per-pauci, -ae, -a, *adj.*, very few.
per-petuō, *adv.*, constantly.
per-petuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, constant, unbroken.
per-rumpo, -ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *v. a.*, break through.
per-sequor, -i, -secūtus, *v. dep.*, follow up, pursue.
per-sevēro, 1 *v. n.*, persist.
per-solvo, -ere, -solvi, -solūtum, *v. a.*, pay (*in full*).
per-spicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, *v. a.*, see through, see clearly.
per-suādeo, -ēre, -si, -sum, *v. a.* (*with dat.*), persuade.
per-terreo, 2 *v. a.*, frighten thoroughly, terrify.
per-tinācia, -ae, *f.*, obstinacy.
per-tineo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, *v. n.*, tend, extend; *eodem pertinere*, to point in same direction.
per-turbo, 1 *v. a.*, alarm, disturb greatly.
per-venio, -īre, -vēni, -ventum, *v. n.*, reach, arrive.
pēs, pedis, *m.*, foot; *pedem referre*, retire.
peto, -ere, -īvi *or* -ii, -ītum, *v. a.*, seek, make for, ask.
phalanx, -angis, *f.*, phalanx, close mass of troops.
pīlum, -i, *n.*, javelin.
placeo, 2 *v. n.* (*with dat.*), please; *impers.*, *mihi placet*, I determine.
plānitiēs, -ēi, *f.*, plain, level ground.
plebs, plēbis, *f.*, the common people.
plērumque, *adv.*, generally, as a rule.
plūrimum, *adv.*, very much, most.
plūrimus, -a, -um, *adj.*

(*sup. of* multus), most; *plur.*, very many.
plūs, *adv.*, more (*comp. n. of* multum); *as noun*, plūs, plūris, more; *pl.*, plūres, plūrium, more, several.
poena, -ae, *f.*, punishment, penalty, vengeance.
polliceor, -ēri, -itus, *v. dep.*, promise, offer.
pōno, -ere, posui, positum, *v. a.*, place, put down; *ponere castra*, pitch a camp.
pons, pontis, *m.*, bridge.
populātio, -ōnis, *f.*, ravaging, devastation.
populor, I *v. dep.*, plunder, ravage.
populus, -i, *m.*, a people.
por-rigo, -ere, -rexi, -rectum, *v. n.*, stretch, extend.
porto, I *v. a.*, carry.
portōrium, -i, *n.*, customs.
posco, -ere, poposci, *v. a.*, demand.
possessio, -ōnis, *f.*, possession, occupation.
possideo, -ēre, -sēdi, -sessum, *v. a.*, possess, hold.
possum, posse, potui, *v. n.*, am able, can; *multum posse*, to have great power.
post, *adv.*, after, afterwards; *prep. with acc.*, after.
posteā, *adv.*, afterwards.
posteā-quam, *conj.*, after, when.
posterus, -a, -um, *adj.*, the next, subsequent.
post-quam, *conj.*, when, after.
postrīdiē, *adv.*, next day.
postulātum, -i, *n.*, demand.
postulo, I *v. a.*, demand.
potens, -ntis, *adj.*, powerful.
potentātus, -ūs, *m.*, supremacy, dominion.
potentia, -ae, *f.*, power.
potestās, -ātis, *f.*, power, opportunity; *potestatem facere*, give opportunity.
potior, 4 *v. dep.* (*with abl.*), get possession of.
potius, *adv.*, rather.
prae, *prep. with abl.*, compared with.
prae-caveo, -ēre, -cāvi, -cautum, *v. n.*, guard against.
prae-cēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. n.*, go before, excel.
prae-cipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *v. a.*, instruct, order.
prae-cipuē, *adv.*, especially.
prae-dico, I *v. a.*, assert, boast.
prae-fectus, -i, *m.*, one in command, prefect, officer.
prae-ficio, -ere, -fēci, -fectum, *v. a.*, put in command of.
prae-mitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, send forward.
praemium, -i, *n.*, reward, prize.
prae-opto, I *v. a.*, choose rather, prefer.
prae-pōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, *v. a.*, set over.
prae-scrībo, -ere, -psi, -ptum, *v. a.*, direct, command.
prae-scriptum, -i, *n.*, order.
prae-sens, -ntis, *adj.*, present; *in praesentia* (*n. pl.*), for the present.
prae-sertim, *adv.*, especially.
prae-sidium, -i, *n.*, guard, garrison, defence.
prae-sto, -are, -stiti, -stātum *or* -stitum, *v. n.* excel; *praestat*, it is better.
prae-sum, -esse, -fui, *v. n.*,

be at head of, in command of.

praeter, *prep. with acc.*, past, beyond, besides, except.

praeter-quam, *adv.*, except.

praetereā, *adv.*, besides, moreover.

praeter-eo, -īre, -ii *or* -īvi, -itum, *v. a.*, pass; *praeterita*, the past.

praetor, -ōris, *m.*, praetor, a Roman magistrate.

praetōrius, -a, -um, *adj.*, praetorian. *See* Introduction, § ii.

preces, -um, *f. pl.* (*sing. except* prece, *not classical*), prayers.

prendo *or* **prehendo**, -ere, -ndi, -nsum, *v. a.*, grasp, lay hold of.

premo, -ere, pressi, pressum, *v. a.*, vex, harass.

pretium, -i, *n.*, price.

prī-diē, *adv.*, the day before.

prīmō, *adv.*, at first, firstly.

prīmum, *adv.*, at first; *quam prīmum*, as soon as possible.

prīmus, -a, -um, *adj.*, first; *primā luce, nocte*, at daybreak, nightfall.

prin-ceps, -ipis, *adj.*, foremost, first; *as noun*, chief, leading man.

principātus, -ūs, *m.*, foremost place, leadership.

pristinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, former, of old.

prius, *adv.*, before.

prīvātim, *adv.*, in private capacity.

prīvātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, private.

prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of, instead of, on behalf of, in proportion to, in view of.

probo, 1 *v. a.*, approve, prove.

prō-cēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum, *v. n.*, advance.

prō-curro, -cucurri *and* -curri, -cursum, 3 *v. n.*, run forward.

prōd-eo, -īre, -ii, -itum, *v. n.*, advance.

prō-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *v. a.*, give up, hand down, betray.

prō-dūco, 3 *v. a.*, lead forth, prolong.

proelium, -i, *n.*, battle.

profectio, -ōnis, *f.*, setting out, start.

proficiscor, -i, -fectus, *v. dep.*, set out, start.

pro-fugio, -ere, -fūgi, -fugitum, *v. n.*, escape.

prō-gredior, -i, -gressus, *v. dep.*, advance, proceed.

pro-hibeo, 2, repel, prevent.

prō-icio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, *v. a.*, throw forward, fling away.

prō-moveo, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *v. a.*, move forward.

prope, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, near, nearly; *comp.* propius, nearer.

prō-pello, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, *v. a.*, repulse, rout.

propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, near, related; propinqua, *f. as noun*, female relation.

prō-pōno, -ere, -posui, -positum, *v. a.*, put forward, set forth.

propter, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, close to.

proptereā, *adv.*, on that

account; *propterea quod*, because.
prō-pulso, I *v. a.*, repel.
prō-spicio, -ere, -spexi, -spectum, *v. a.*, look forward, provide for.
prō-vincia, -ae, *f.*, a province; *see* Introduction, § ii.
proximē, *adv.* (*sup. of* prope), next, last.
proximus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*sup. adj. from* prope, propior), nearest, next.
publicē, *adv.*, officially, on behalf of the State.
publicus, -a, -um, *adj.*, public.
pudet, -ēre, -uit, *v. impers.* (*with acc. of person, gen. of thing*), one is ashamed.
pudor, -ōris, *m.*, sense of shame.
puer, -eri, *m.*, boy; *pl.*, children.
pugna, -ae, *f.*, battle.
pugno, I *v. n.*, fight.
purgo, I *v. a.*, clear.
puto, I *v. a.*, think, suppose.

quā, *adv.*, where.
quadrāgintā, *indecl. num.*, forty.
quadringenti, -ae, -a, *indecl. num.*, four hundred.
quaero, -ere, quaesīvi *or* -ii, quaesītum, *v. a.*, seek, ask.
quaestor, -ōris, *m.*, quaestor.
quālis, -e, *adj.* (such) as; *interrog.*, of what sort?
quam, *adv.*, how, than; *with sup.*, as . . . as possible.
quam-diū, *adv.*, as long as.
quamobrem (*or* quam ob rem), *adv.*, why, wherefore.
quantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, how great?; *as rel. to* tantus, as great as; *neut. as noun*, how much of.
quā-rē, *adv.*, wherefore, why.
quartus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fourth.
quattuor, *indecl. num.*, four.
quattuor-decim, *indecl. num.*, fourteen.
-que, *enclitic conj.*, and.
quem-ad-modum, *adv.*, as.
queror, -i, questus, *v. dep.*, complain, complain of.
qui, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which; *interrog. adj.*, what?
qui-, quae-, quod-cunque, *indef. adj. and pron.*, whoever, whatever.
quid, *adv.*, why?
quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, *indef. adj. and pron.*, one, a certain; *pl.*, some.
quidem, *adv.*, indeed; *ne . . . quidem*, not even.
quīn, *conj.*, that not, but that, that (*with verbs of negative meaning*); *quin etiam*, nay more.
quindecim, *indecl. num.*, fifteen.
quingenti, -ae, -a, *num.*, five hundred.
quīni, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*, five apiece.
quinquāgintā, *indecl. num.*, fifty.
quinque, *indecl. num.*, five.
quintus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fifth.
quis, qua, quid, *indef. pron.*, any.
quis, quid, *interrog. pron.*, who? what?
quis-quam, quae-quam, quid- *or* quic-quam, *indef. pron.*, anyone (*in negative and quasi-negative sentences*).

quisque, quaeque, quodque, *indef. adj.* (quidque, *pron.*), each; *with superl.*, all the . . .
quis-quis, quid-quid, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whatever.
quō, *adv.*, whither, where; *with comp. in final clauses*, in order that.
quod, *conj.*, because, whereas; *quod si*, but if.
quō-minus, *conj.* (*with negative verbs, lit.* by which the less), from (*doing something*).
quoniam, *conj.* (*with indic.*), since.
quoque, *adv.*, also.
quot-annīs, *adv.*, yearly, every year.
quotiēs, *adv.*, how often? as often as.

rādix, -īcis, *f.*, root; *pl.*, base.
rapīna, -ae, *f.*, plunder.
ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, plan, calculation, method, strategy; *rationem habere*, take into account.
ratis, -is, *f.*, raft.
recens, -ntis, *adj.*, fresh, recent.
re-cipio, -ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *v. a.*, get back, recover, admit, receive; *se recipere*, retreat.
re-cūso, 1 *v. a.*, refuse; *recusare de*, to raise objections over.
rēda, -ae, *f.*, wagon.
red-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *v. a.*, give back, render.
red-eo, -īre, -ii (-īvi), -itum, *v. n.*, go back, return.
red-igo, -ere, -ēgi, -actum, *v. a.*, bring back, reduce.
red-imo, -ere, -ēmi, -emptum, *v. a.*, buy back, buy up.
red-integro, 1 *v. a.*, renew, restore.
red-itio, -ōnis, *f.*, return.
re-dūco, 3 *v. a.*, bring back, lead back.
re-fero, -ferre, -rettuli, -relātum, *v. a.*, carry back, report; *pedem referre*, retire; *gratiam referre*, make a return.
regio, -ōnis, *f.*, district.
regnum, -i, *n.*, kingship, kingdom.
rē-icio, -ere, -iēci, -iectum, *v. a.*, throw back, throw aside.
re-linquo, -ere, -līqui, -lictum, *v. a.*, leave behind, abandon.
reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, left, remaining; *pl.*, the rest.
re-maneo, -ēre, -mansi, -mansum, *v. n.*, remain behind.
re-miniscor, -i, *v. dep.*, remember.
re-mitto, -ere, -mīsi, -missum, *v. a.*, send back, give up, remit.
re-moveo, -ēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *v. a.*, remove, put away; remōtus (*p. p. p. as adj.*), distant.
re-mūneror, 1 *v. dep.*, reward.
re-nuntio, 1 *v. a.*, bring back word.
re-pello, -ere, reppuli, repulsum, *v. a.*, drive back.
repente, *adv.*, on a sudden.
repentīnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sudden.
re-perio, -īre, repperi, repertum, *v. a.*, find, discover.
re-peto, -ere, -īvi *or* **-ii, -ītum,**

v. a., demand back, claim one's due, exact.
re-praesento, I *v. a.*, do at once.
re-prehendo, -ere, -di, -sum, *v. a.*, blame.
re-pudio, I *v. a.*, reject.
re-pugno, I *v. n.*, resist, oppose.
rēs, rei, *f.*, *translation depends on context*; *as a rule avoid* 'thing,' 'affair.'
rē-scindo, -ere, -scidi, -scissum, *v. a.*, cut away, tear down.
rē-scisco, -ere, -scīvi *or* -ii, -scītum, *v. a.*, ascertain.
rē-scrībo, -ere, -psi, -ptum, *v. a.*, transfer, enrol.
re-servo, I *v. a.*, keep back, reserve.
re-sisto, -ere, -stiti, -stitum, *v. n.*, resist, withstand.
rē-spondeo, -ēre, -di, -sum, *v. a.*, answer.
rē-sponsum, -i, *n.*, answer.
respublica *or* res publica, rei publicae, *f.*, the state, public business.
rē-spuo, -ere, -ui, *v. a.*, refuse with scorn.
rē-stituo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *v. a.*, restore, replace.
re-tineo, -ere, -tinui, -tentum, *v. a.*, restrain, hold back.
re-vello, -ere, -velli, -vulsum, *v. a.*, pull down, tear away.
re-vertor, -i, -versus, *v. dep.*, return; *perf. in use*, reverti (*active*).
rex, rēgis, *m.*, king.
rīpa, -ae, *f.*, bank.
rogo, I *v. a.*, ask, ask for.
rota, -ae, *f.*, wheel.
rursus, *adv.*, again.

saepe, *adv.*, often.
saepe-numerō, *adv.*, often.
salūs, -ūtis, *f.*, safety.
sancio, -īre, sanxi, sanctum, *v. a.*, confirm, bind.
sānitās, -ātis, *f.*, sound mind.
sarcina, -ae, *f.*, pack, kit (*usually in pl.*).
satis, *adv.*, enough, fairly, pretty; *satis causae*, reason enough; *satis habēre*, to be content; *comp.*, satius, better.
satis-facio, -ere, -fēci, -factum, *v. n.*, make amends, apologize.
satis-factio, -ōnis, *f.*, satisfaction, apology.
satius. *See* satis.
scelus, -eris, *n.*, crime, wickedness.
scientia, -ae, *f.*, knowledge.
scio, 4 *v. a.*, know.
scrībo, -ere, -psi, -ptum, *v. a.*, write.
scūtum, -i, *n.*, shield.
sē, sui, sibĭ, sē, *reflex. pron.*, him-, her-self, them-selves.
sēcrētō, *adv.*, secretly, privately.
secum = *cum se.*
secundum, *prep. with acc.*, next to, after.
secundus, -a, -um, *adj.*, second; prosperous; *res secundae*, prosperity.
secus, *adv.*, otherwise; *comp.* sētius; *nihilo setius*, none the less.
sed, *conj.*, but.
sē-decim, *indecl. num.*, sixteen.

sus-tineo, -ēre, -ui, -tentum, *v. a.*, uphold, endure, resist, withstand, restrain.
suus, -a, -um, *adj.*, his, her, their own; *pl.*, *as noun*, one's men.

tabernāculum, -i, *n.*, tent.
tabula, -ae, *f.*, tablet, list; *pl.* (*often*), accounts.
taceo, 2 *v. a. and n.*, be silent; keep silence about.
tacitus, -a, -um, *adj.*, silent.
tam, *adv.*, so.
tam-diū, *adv.*, so long.
tamen, *conj.*, yet, nevertheless.
tam-etsī, *conj.*, even though.
tandem, *adv.*, at length, at last; *in questions*, pray.
tantopere (tanto opere), *adv.*, so greatly.
tantus, -a, -um, *adj.*, so great; *tanti*, of such value.
tectum, -i, *n.*, roof, house.
tēlum, -i, *n.*, missile, dart.
temerārius, -a, -um, *adj.*, rash.
temere, *adv.*, rashly, at random.
temperantia, -ae, *f.*, self-restraint, moderation.
tempero, I *v. n.*, control. refrain.
tempto, I *v. a.*, try, attempt.
tempus, -oris, *n.*, time.
teneo, -ēre, -ui, tentum, *v. a.*, hold, possess, restrain.
ter, *adv.*, thrice.
tergum, -i, *n.*, back; *tergum vertere*, take to flight.
terra, -ae, *f.*, earth.
terrēnus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of earth.
tertius, -a, -um, *adj.*, third.
testāmentum, -i, *n.*, will.
testimōnium, -i, *n.*, evidence.
testis, -is, *c.*, witness.
timeo, -ēre, -ui, *v. a. and n.*, fear, be afraid.
timidus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fearful, cowardly.
timor, -ōris, *m.*, fear.
tolero, I *v. a.*, endure, bear.
tollo, -ere, sustuli, sublātum, *v. a.*, lift, elate, remove, do away with.
tot, *indecl. adj.*, so many.
totidem, *indecl. adj.*, (just) so many.
tōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* (*gen.*, tōtius), the whole, all.
trā-do, -ere, -didi, -ditum, *v. a*, hand over, hand down, betray.
trā-dūco, 3 *v. a.*, lead across.
trāgula, -ae, *f.*, javelin.
traho, -ere, -xi, -ctum, *v. a.*, draw, drag.
trā-no, I *v. a.*, swim across.
trans, *prep. with acc.*, across.
transeo, -ire, -ii *or* -īvi, -itum, *v. a.*, cross.
trans-fīgo, -ere, -fixi, -fixum, *v. a.*, pierce.
trans-porto, I *v. a.*, carry across.
tre-centi, -ae, -a, *adj.*, three hundred.
trē-decim, *indecl. num.*, thirteen.
trēs, tria (*gen.* trium), *adj.*, three.
tribūnus, -i, *m.*, tribune. *See* Introduction.
tribuo, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, *v. a.*, grant, assign, ascribe.
trī-duum, -i, *n.*, (*space of*) three days.
trīgintā, *indecl. num.*, thirty.

trīni, -ae, -a, *adj.*, three each, threefold.
trĭ-plex, -icis, *adj.*, threefold, triple.
tristis, -e, *adj.*, sad, gloomy.
tristitia, -ae, *f.*, sadness, dejection.
tum, *adv.*, then.
tumultus, -ūs, *m.*, rising, outbreak.
tumulus, -i, *m.*, mound, heap.
turpis, -e, *adj.*, disgraceful, base.

ubĭ, *adv.*, where, when.
ulciscor, -i, ultus, *v. dep.*, avenge, punish.
ullus, -a, -um (*gen.* ullius), *adj.* (*in negative and quasi-negative sentences*), any, *more rarely pronoun*, any one.
ulterior, -us (*gen.* -ōris), *adj.*, further; *superl.*, ultimus.
ultrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond.
ultrō, *adv.*, besides, unasked; *ultro citroque*, backwards, forwards.
unā, *adv.*, together with, at the same time.
unde, *adv.*, whence, from which.
undique, *adv.*, on *or* from all sides.
unquam, *adv.*, ever.
ūnus, -a, -um (*gen.* unius), *adj.*, one, alone, only.
urbs, urbis, *f.*, city, the City (*Rome*).
usque, *adv.*, even; *usque ad*, right up to.
ūsus, -ūs, *m.*, use, service, advantage, experience; *ex usu*, to the advantage of.

ut, utī, *adv.*, as, how, when; *conj.*, that, in order that.
uter, -tra, -trum (*gen.* ŭtrius), *pron*, which of two?
uterque, -traque, -trumque (*gen.* -triusque), *pron.*, each of two, both.
ūtor, -i, ūsus, *v. dep.*, use, enjoy, follow, adopt.
ŭtrimque, *adv.*, on both sides.
ŭtrum, *adv.*, whether; *utrum . . . an, necne*, whether . . . or, or not.
uxor, -ōris, *f.*, wife.

vaco, I *v. n.*, be free from, unoccupied.
vadum, -i, *n.*, ford.
vagor, I *v. dep.*, wander, roam about.
valeo, 2 *v. n.*, be strong, prevail; *plurimum valere*, have very great weight.
vallum, -i, *n.*, rampart.
vasto, I *v. a.*, lay waste.
vāticinātio, -ōnis, *f.*, prophecy, divination.
-ve, *enclitic particle*, or.
vectīgal, -ālis, *n.*, tax, tribute.
vehementer, *adv.*, vigorously, hotly.
veho, -ere, vexi, vectum, *v. a.*, carry; *pass.*, ride.
vel, *conj.*, or.
vēlox, -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, quick.
velut, *adv.*, just as.
venio, -īre, vēni, ventum, *v. n.*, come.
verbum, -i, *n.*, word.
vereor, 2 *v. dep.*, fear.
vergo, -ere (*no perf. or sup.*), *v. n.*, lie.

vergobretus, -i, *m.*, judge, a Gallic magistrate. (*The word means* 'efficient in judgment.')
vērō, *adv.*, indeed, but.
versor, I *v. dep.*, be engaged with, associated with.
verto, -ere, -ti, -sum, *v. a.*, turn ; *terga vertere*, take to flight.
vērus, -a, -um, *adj.*, true.
vesper, -eri (*or* -eris), *m.*, evening.
veterānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, veteran.
vetus, -eris (*neut. pl.*, vetera), *adj.*, old, ancient.
vexo, I *v. a.*, harass, ravage.
via, -ae, *f.*, way, route.
victor, -ōris, *adj.*, victorious; *as noun*, conqueror, victor.
victōria, -ae, *f.*, victory.
victus, -ūs, *m.*, manner of life.
vīcus, -i, *m.*, village.
video, -ēre, vīdi, vīsum, *v. a.*, see ; *pass.*, seem.
vigilia, -ae, *f.*, watch. See Introduction, p. 23.
vīginti, *indecl. num.*, twenty.
vinco, -ere, vīci, victum, *v. a.*, defeat, conquer.
vinculum, -i, *n.*, chain ; *ex vinculis*, in chains.
virtūs, -ūtis, *f.*, courage, worth, merit.
vīs (*acc.* vim, *abl.* vi), *f.*, violence, force ; *vim facere*, use force ; *pl.* vīres, strength.
vīta, -ae, *f.*, life.
vīto, I *v. a.*, avoid.
vix, *adv.*, scarcely.
voco, I *v. a.*, call, summon.
volo, velle, volui, *v. irreg.*, wish, be willing ; *quid tibi vis*, what do you want, mean ?
voluntās, -ātis, *f.*, consent, permission, goodwill.
voluptās, -ātis, *f.*, pleasure.
vox, vōcis, *f.*, voice, word, remark.
vulgō, *adv.*, generally, commonly.
vulgus, -i, *n.*, common people, masses.
vulnero, I *v. a.*, wound.
vulnus, -eris, *n.*, wound.
vultus, -ūs, *m.*, expression, face.

X = ten.

MESSRS. BELL'S CATALOGUE

OF

CLASSICAL BOOKS

- Bell's Illustrated Classics—
  - Elementary Series
  - Elementary Illustrated Texts
  - Intermediate Series
- Bell's Latin and Greek Class Books
- Cambridge Texts, with Notes
- Cambridge Greek and Latin Texts
- Cambridge School Classics
- Public School Series
- Bibliotheca Classica
- Other Critical Editions and Texts
- Latin and Greek Class Books

LONDON
GEORGE BELL & SONS, YORK STREET, COVENT GARDEN
CAMBRIDGE: DEIGHTON, BELL & CO.

1900

Elementary Series (*continued*).

CICERO. Speeches against Catiline. I and II (1 vol.). By F. HERRING, M.A., Blundell's School, Tiverton. [*In the Press.*

—— **Selections.** By J. F. CHARLES, B.A., City of London School. [*In the Press.*

CORNELIUS NEPOS. Epaminondas, Hannibal, Cato. By H. L. EARL, M.A., Grammar School, Manchester.

EUTROPIUS. Books I and II (1 vol.). By J. G. SPENCER, B.A., St. Paul's Preparatory School.

HORACE'S ODES. Book I. By C. G. BOTTING, B.A., St. Paul's School.

—— Book II. By C. G. BOTTING, B.A. [*Preparing.*

—— Book III. By H. LATTER, M.A., Cheltenham College. [*Preparing.*

LIVY. Book IX, cc. i–xix. By W. C. FLAMSTEAD WALTERS, M.A., Lecturer in Classics at University College, Cardiff.

—— **Hannibal's First Campaign in Italy.** (Selected from Book XXI.) By F. E. A. TRAYES, M.A., St. Paul's School.

OVID'S METAMORPHOSES. Book I. By G. H. WELLS, M.A., Merchant Taylors' School.

—— **Selection from the Metamorphoses.** By J. W. E. PEARCE, M.A., University College School, London.

—— **Elegiac Selections.** By F. COVERLEY SMITH, B.A., High School, Nottingham. [*Preparing.*

—— **Tristia.** Book III. By H. R. WOOLRYCH, M.A., Head Master of Blackheath School. [*In the Press.*

PHAEDRUS. A Selection. By Rev. R. H. CHAMBERS, M.A., Head Master of Christ's College, Brecon. [*In the Press.*

STORIES OF GREAT MEN. By Rev. F. CONWAY, M.A., Merchant Taylors' School. [*In the Press.*

VERGIL'S AENEID. Book I. By Rev. E. H. S. ESCOTT, M.A., Dulwich College.

—— Book II. By L. D. WAINWRIGHT, M.A., St. Paul's School.

—— Book III. By L. D. WAINWRIGHT, M.A.

—— Book IV. By A. S. WARMAN, B.A., The Grammar School, Manchester.

—— Book VI. By J. T. PHILLIPSON, M.A., Head Master of Christ's College, Finchley. [*Preparing.*

—— **Selection from Books VII to XII.** By W. G. COAST, B.A., Fettes College. [*In the Press.*

Elementary Series (*continued*).

GREEK AUTHORS.

AESCHYLUS' PROMETHEUS VINCTUS. By C. E. LAURENCE, M.A., Blackheath College. [*Preparing.*

EURIPIDES' ALCESTIS. By E. H. BLAKENEY, M.A., Head Master of the Grammar School, Sandwich. [*Preparing.*

—— **Bacchae.** By G. M. GWYTHER, M.A., Plymouth College. [*Preparing.*

—— **Hecuba.** By Rev. A. W. UPCOTT, M.A., Head Master of St. Edmund's School, Canterbury. [*Preparing.*

—— **Medea.** By Rev. T. NICKLIN, M.A., Llandovery College. [*Preparing.*

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS. By E. C. MARCHANT, M.A. [*Book I shortly, Book II preparing.*

Elementary Illustrated Texts.

The Texts of the foregoing Series are issued with Vocabularies (but without Notes). Limp cloth, cut flush, 1s. each.

Some Opinions of Schoolmasters.

'I have always been strongly in favour of the employment of illustration to assist the study of the classics. I am glad to see so definite an attempt to help us in this direction, and sincerely hope it will prove a success.'—Rev. Dr. FIELD, *Radley.*

'I have always believed in illustration wherever it is possible, and feel sure that these "Illustrated Classics" will be very useful.'—Rev. L. S. MILFORD, *Haileybury College.*

'The illustrations seem to me good, and useful for rousing interest and increasing appreciation of the subject-matter. I have often in teaching wanted just such illustrations.'—Rev. Dr. WILSON, *Lancing College.*

'Distinctly good of their kind. I shall consider their introduction favourably when opportunity offers.'—Rev. H. B. GRAY, *Bradfield College.*

'Your "Illustrated Classics" seem to me excellent. I have already introduced the "Caesar," and hope to use others.'—Rev. R. COLLEY, *Stonyhurst College, Blackburn.*

'I am very favourably impressed with the "Illustrated Classics" that you have sent me. In every respect they seem admirably suited for use in the lower Form of schools. I shall hope to make use of them in our school.'—C. G. PRUEN, *Cheltenham College.*

'Your "Illustrated Classics" are excellent and wonderfully cheap. We shall use them.'—Rev. W. CAMPBELL PENNEY, *Elizabeth College, Guernsey.*

*** *A complete illustrated Catalogue of the Series may be had on application.*

Intermediate Series.

With numerous Illustrations and Maps. Crown 8vo.

CAESAR'S SEVENTH CAMPAIGN IN GAUL, B.C. 52. **De Bello Gallico.** Lib. VII. Edited, with Notes, Excursus, and Tables of Idioms, by the Rev. W. COOKWORTHY COMPTON, M.A., Head Master of Dover College. Third Edition. *2s. 6d. net.*

The following are in active preparation:—

SOPHOCLES' ANTIGONE. Edited by G. H. WELLS, M.A., Merchant Taylors' School. With numerous Illustrations. [*Shortly.*

THE ATHENIANS IN SICILY. Being portions of Thucydides, Books VI and VII. Edited by the Rev. W. COOKWORTHY COMPTON, M.A., Head Master of Dover College. With numerous Illustrations and Maps.

HOMER'S ODYSSEY. Book I. Edited by E. C. MARCHANT, M.A., late Classical Master of St. Paul's School. With numerous Illustrations.

LIVY. Book XXI. Edited by F. E. A. TRAYES, M.A., St. Paul's School. With numerous Illustrations and Maps.

TACITUS: AGRICOLA. Edited by J. W. E. PEARCE, M.A., late Assistant Master at University College School. [*Preparing.*

Bell's Illustrated Latin Readers.

Edited by E. C. MARCHANT, M.A.

I. **SCALAE PRIMAE. A Selection of Simple Stories for Translation into English.** With Vocabulary. By J. G. SPENCER, B.A. Pott 8vo, with 29 Illustrations, *1s.*

II. **SCALAE MEDIAE. Short Extracts from Eutropius and Caesar, Graduated in Difficulty.** With Vocabulary. By PERCY A. UNDERHILL, M.A. Pott 8vo, with 20 Illustrations, *1s.*

III. **SCALAE TERTIAE. Selections in Prose and Verse from Caesar, Nepos, Phaedrus, and Ovid, Graduated in Difficulty.** With Vocabulary. By PERCY A. UNDERHILL, M.A. [*Preparing.*

After using these Readers the learner is recommended to use Bell's Illustrated Elementary Series.

FIRST EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE. By E. A. WELLS, M.A., Highfield School, Southampton. Pott 8vo, with Vocabulary, *1s.*

Cambridge Texts, with Notes.

Price 1s. 6d. each, with exceptions.

AESCHYLUS. 6 vols. **Prometheus Vinctus—Septem contra Thebas—Agamemnon—Persae—Eumenides—Choephoroe.** By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D., late Classical Examiner to the University of London.

CICERO. 3 vols. **De Amicitia—De Senectute—Epistolae Selectae.** By GEORGE LONG, M.A.

EURIPIDES. 13 vols. **Alcestis—Medea—Hippolytus—Hecuba—Bacchae—Ion** (2s.)—**Orestes—Phoenissae—Troades—Hercules Furens—Andromache—Iphigenia in Tauris—Supplices.** By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D.

HOMER. Iliad, Book I. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. (1s.)

OVID'S Fasti. 3 vols. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 2s. each. Books I and II—Books III and IV—Books V and VI.

OVID. Selections from the Amores, Tristia, Heroides, and Metamorphoses. By A. J. MACLEANE, M.A.

SOPHOCLES. 5 vols. **Oedipus Tyrannus—Oedipus Coloneus—Antigone—Electra—Ajax.** By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D.

TERENCE. 4 vols. **Andria—Hauton Timorumenos—Phormio—Adelphoe.** By Prof. WAGNER.

VIRGIL'S WORKS. 12 vols. Abridged from Prof. CONINGTON'S Edition by Professors NETTLESHIP and WAGNER and Rev. J. G. SHEPPARD.

Bucolics—Georgics, I and II—**Georgics,** III and IV—**Aeneid,** I and II—**Aeneid,** III and IV—**Aeneid,** V and VI (2s.)—**Aeneid,** VII—**Aeneid,** VIII—**Aeneid,** IX—**Aeneid,** X—**Aeneid,** XI—**Aeneid,** XII.

XENOPHON'S ANABASIS. 6 vols. With Life, Itinerary, Index, and Three Maps. MACMICHAEL'S Edition, revised by J. E. MELHUISH, M.A., Assistant Master at St. Paul's School. In separate Books.

Book I (with Life, Introduction, Itinerary, and Three Maps)—Books II and III—Book IV—Book V—Book VI—Book VII.

XENOPHON'S HELLENICA. Book I and Book II. By the Rev. L. D. DOWDALL, M.A., Trinity College, Dublin, B.D., Christ Church, Oxon. 2s. each.

Cambridge Texts.

Just added. Three Vols. 2s. each.

P. OVIDI NASONIS OPERA, ex Corpore Poetarum Latinorum, a JOHANNE PERCIVAL POSTGATE Edito, separatim Typis Impressa.

Tom. I—**Heroides.** Recognovit A. PALMER.—**Amores.** Recognovit G. M. EDWARDS.—**Medicamina Faciei Femineae.** Recognovit G. M. EDWARDS.—**Ars Amatoria.** Recognovit G. M. EDWARDS.—**Remedia Amoris.** Recognovit G. M. EDWARDS.

Tom. II—**Metamorphoses.** Recognovit G. M. EDWARDS.

Tom. III—**Fasti.** Recognovit G. A. DAVIES.—**Tristia.** Recognovit S. G. OWEN.—**Epistolae ex Ponto.** Recognovit S. G. OWEN.—**Halieutica.** Recognovit G. M. EDWARDS.—**Ibis.** Recognovit A. E. HOUSMAN.—**Fragmenta.** Recognovit J. P. POSTGATE.

'Ovid has never been presented in a more attractive form. It will be an immense relief to schoolmasters, who form the class of society most directly interested in Ovid, to possess a text in handy form on which they can absolutely rely.'—*Cambridge Review.*

AESCHYLUS. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. *2s.*

CAESAR, De Bello Gallico. By G. LONG, M.A. *1s. 6d.*

CICERO, De Senectute et De Amicitia et Epistolae Selectae. By G. LONG, M.A. *1s. 6d.*

CICERONIS Orationes in Verrem. By G. LONG, M.A. *2s. 6d.*

EURIPIDES. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 3 vols. *2s.* each.

HERODOTUS. By J. W. BLAKESLEY, B.D. 2 vols. *2s. 6d.* each.

HOMERI ILIAS. Lib. I-XII. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. *1s. 6d.*

HORATIUS. By A. J. MACLEANE, M.A. *1s. 6d.*

JUVENALIS ET PERSIUS. By A. J. MACLEANE, M.A. *1s. 6d.*

LUCRETIUS. By H. A. J. MUNRO, M.A. *2s.*

SALLUSTI Catilina et Jugurtha. By G. LONG, M.A. *1s. 6d.*

SOPHOCLES. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. *2s. 6d.*

TERENTIUS. By W. WAGNER, Ph.D. *2s.*

THUCYDIDES. By J. W. DONALDSON, B.D. 2 vols. *2s.* each.

VERGILIUS. By J. CONINGTON, M.A. *2s.*

XENOPHONTIS Expeditio Cyri. By J. F. MACMICHAEL, M.A. *1s. 6d.*

NOVUM TESTAMENTUM Graece, Textus Stephanici, 1550. Accedunt variae lectiones editionum Bezae, Elzeviri, Lachmanni, Tischendorfii, Tregellesii. Curante F. H. SCRIVENER, M.A. New Edition. *4s. 6d.*

Editio Major. Containing the readings approved by Bishop Westcott and Dr. Hort, and those adopted by the Revisers. Also the Eusebian Canons and the Capitula and additional references. Sm. post 8vo, *7s. 6d.* An Edition with wide margins. Half-bound, *12s.*

Cambridge School Classics.

Foolscap 8vo.

CAESAR. De Bello Gallico. With English Notes for Junior Classes. By G. LONG, M.A. Books I–III, 1*s.* 6*d.* Books IV, V, 1*s.* 6*d.* Books VI, VII, 1*s.* 6*d.*

CATULLUS, TIBULLUS, and PROPERTIUS. Selected Poems. By the Rev. A. H. WRATISLAW and F. N. SUTTON, B.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

CICERO. De Senectute, De Amicitia, and Select Epistles. By G. LONG, M.A. New Edition. 3*s.*

CORNELIUS NEPOS. By the late J. F. MACMICHAEL, M.A. 2*s.*

HOMER. Iliad. Books I–XII. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 4*s.* Books I–VI, 2*s.* 6*d.* Books VII–XII, 2*s.* 6*d.*

HORACE. By A. J. MACLEANE, M.A. With a short Life. 3*s.* 6*d.* Or, Part I, **Odes**, 2*s.*; Part II, **Satires and Epistles**, 2*s.*

JUVENAL. Sixteen Satires (expurgated). By HERMAN PRIOR, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*

MARTIAL. Select Epigrams. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D., and the late W. H. STONE. With a Life of the Poet. 4*s.* 6*d.*

OVID. The Six Books of the Fasti. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. New Edition, 3*s.* 6*d.* Or Books I and II, 1*s.* 6*d.*; Books III and IV, 1*s.* 6*d.*; Books V and VI, 1*s.* 6*d.*

SALLUST. Catilina and Jugurtha. With a Life. By G. LONG, M.A., and J. G. FRAZER, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.* Or, separately, 2*s.* each.

TACITUS. Germania and Agricola. By P. FROST, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

VIRGIL. Bucolics, Georgics, and Aeneid, Books I–IV. By J. G. SHEPPARD, D.C.L. Abridged from Conington's Edition. 4*s.* 6*d.*

—— **Aeneid,** Books V–XII. Abridged from Conington's Edition, by H. NETTLESHIP, M.A., Professor of Latin in the University of Oxford, and W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 4*s.* 6*d.* Or in nine separate volumes, price 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

XENOPHON. The Anabasis. With Life, Itinerary, Index, and Three Maps. By the late J. F. MACMICHAEL. 3*s.* 6*d.* Or in four separate volumes, price 1*s.* 6*d.* each.

—— **The Cyropaedia.** By G. M. GORHAM, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.* Books I and II, 1*s.* 6*d.* Books V and VI, 1*s.* 6*d.*

—— **The Memorabilia.** By P. FROST, M.A. 3*s.*

Public School Series.

Crown 8vo.

ARISTOPHANES. Peace. Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
—— **Acharnians.** Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 2*s.* 6*d.*
—— **Frogs.** Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 2*s.* 6*d.*
—— **Plutus.** Edited by M. T. QUINN, M.A. 3*s.* 6*d.*

CICERO. Letters to Atticus. Book I. Edited by A. PRETOR, M.A. 3rd Edition. 4*s.* 6*d.*

DEMOSTHENES. The Oration against the Law of Leptines. Edited by B. W. BEATSON, M.A. 3rd Edition. 3*s.* 6*d.*

DEMOSTHENES. De Falsa Legatione. Edited by the late R. SHILLETO, M.A. 8th Edition. 6*s.*

LIVY. Book VI. Edited by E. S. WEYMOUTH, M.A., and G. F. HAMILTON, B.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*
—— Book XXI. Edited by Rev. L. D. DOWDALL, M.A., B.D. 2*s.*
—— Book XXII. Edited by Rev L. D. DOWDALL. 2*s.*

PLATO. Protagoras. Edited by W. WAYTE, M.A. 7th Edit. 4*s.* 6*d.*
—— **The Apology of Socrates and Crito.** 12th Edition. Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 2*s.* 6*d.*
—— **Phaedo.** Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 13th Edition. 5*s.* 6*d.*
—— **Gorgias.** Edited by the late W. H. THOMPSON, D.D. 6*s.*
—— **Euthyphro.** Edited by G. H. WELLS, M.A. 3rd Edition. 3*s.*
—— **Euthydemus.** Edited by G. H. WELLS, M.A. 4*s.*
—— **The Republic.** Books I and II. Edited by G. H. WELLS, M.A. 4th Edition. 5*s.*

PLAUTUS. Menaechmei. Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 3rd Edition. 4*s.* 6*d.*
—— **Trinummus.** Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 6th Edition. 4*s.* 6*d.*
—— **Aulularia.** Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 5th Edition. 4*s.* 6*d.*
—— **Mostellaria.** Edited by Professor E. A. SONNENSCHEIN, M.A. 5*s.*

SOPHOCLES. The Trachiniae. Edited by A. PRETOR, M.A. 4*s.* 6*d.*
—— **The Oedipus Tyrannus.** Edited by B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. 2*s.* 6*d.*

TERENCE. Edited by W. WAGNER, Ph.D. 3rd Edition. 7*s.* 6*d.*

THUCYDIDES. Book VI. Edited by T. W. DOUGAN, M.A. 2*s.*

Bibliotheca Classica.

8vo.

Edited under the direction of the late George Long, M.A., and the late Rev. A. J. Macleane, M.A.

AESCHYLUS. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. Fourth Edition. 8*s.*

CICERO'S ORATIONS. Edited by G. LONG, M.A. 4 vols. Vols. I and II, 8*s.* each. Vols. III and IV, *out of Print.*

DEMOSTHENES. Edited by R. WHISTON, M.A. 2 vols. 16*s.*

EURIPIDES. Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. Second Edition, revised. 3 vols. Vol. I *out of Print.* Vols. II and III, 8*s.* each.

HERODOTUS. Edited by J. W. BLAKESLEY, B.D. 2 vols. 12*s.*

HESIOD. Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. Second Edition. 5*s.*

HOMER. Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 2 vols. 14*s.*

HORACE. Edited by the late A. J. MACLEANE, M.A. Fourth Edition, by G. LONG. 8*s.*

PLATO. Phaedrus. Edited by W. H. THOMPSON, D.D. 5*s.*

SOPHOCLES. Vol. I. **Oedipus Tyrannus—Oedipus Coloneus—Antigone.** Edited by Rev. F. H. BLAYDES, M.A. 8*s.*

—— Vol. II. **Philoctetes—Electra—Trachiniae—Ajax.** Edited by F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 6*s.*

VERGIL. Edited by Prof. CONINGTON and Prof. NETTLESHIP. 3 vols. Vol. I, Fifth Edition, revised by F. HAVERFIELD, M.A. Vol. II, Fourth Edition. Vol. III, Third Edition. 10*s.* 6*d.* each.

AN ATLAS OF CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY. 24 Maps, by W. HUGHES and GEORGE LONG, M.A. 6*s.*

Other Critical Editions and Texts.

AETNA. Revised, emended, and explained by the late H. A. J. MUNRO, M.A., Litt.D. Demy 8vo, 3*s*. 6*d*.

ARISTOPHANES' COMEDIES. By H. A. HOLDEN, LL.D. Demy 8vo. Vol. I, Text and Notes. 18*s*. Vol. II, Indices. 5*s*. 6*d*. The plays sold separately.

CALPURNIUS SICULUS AND M. AURELIUS OLYMPIUS NEMESIANUS. The Eclogues. Edited by CHARLES HAINES KEENE, M.A. Crown 8vo, 6*s*.

CATULLUS. Edited by J. P. POSTGATE, M.A., Litt.D. Fcap. 8vo, 3*s*.

EURIPIDES, ELECTRA. Edited with Introduction and Notes by C. H. KEENE, M.A. Demy 8vo, 10*s*. 6*d*.

HYPERIDES, THE ORATIONS OF. Edited with Notes and a Translation by F. G. KENYON, M.A. 5*s*. *net*.

LIVY. The first five Books. PRENDEVILLE'S edition revised throughout and the notes in great part rewritten by J. H. FREESE, M.A. Books I, II, III, IV, V. With Maps and Introductions. 1*s*. 6*d*.

LUCAN. The Pharsalia. Edited by C. E. HASKINS, M.A. With an Introduction by W. E. HEITLAND, M.A. Demy 8vo, 14*s*.

LUCRETIUS. Titi Lucreti Cari de rerum natura libri sex. With Notes, Introduction, and Translation by the late H. A. J. MUNRO. Fourth Edition finally Revised. 3 vols. 8vo. Vols. I and II, Introduction, Text and Notes, 18*s*. Vol. III, Translation, 6*s*.

OVID. P. Ovidii Nasonis Heroides XIV. Edited by ARTHUR PALMER, M.A. Demy 8vo, 6*s*.

—— **P. Ovidii Nasonis Ars Amatoria et Amores.** A School Edition, carefully revised and edited, with some Literary Notes, by the Rev. J. H. WILLIAMS, M.A. Fcap. 8vo, 3*s*. 6*d*.

—— **The Metamorphoses.** Book XIII. With Introduction and Notes by C. H. KEENE, M.A. 2*s*. 6*d*.

—— **The Metamorphoses.** Book XIV. With Introduction and Notes by C. H. KEENE, M.A. 2*s*. 6*d*.

*** Books XIII and XIV together. 3*s*. 6*d*.

—— **P. Ovidii Nasonis Epistolarum ex Ponto Liber Primus.** With Introduction and Notes. By C. H. KEENE, M.A. Crown 8vo, 3*s*.

Critical Editions (*continued*).

PLATO. The Proem to the Republic of Plato. Book I and Book II, chaps. 1–10. Edited, with elaborate Introduction, Critical Notes, and Commentary, by T. G. TUCKER, Litt.D. (Cambridge), Hon. Litt.D. (Dublin), Professor of Classical Philology in the University of Melbourne, and formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. [*In the Press.*

PROPERTIUS. Sexti Propertii Carmina recognovit J. P. POSTGATE, Litt.D. 4to, 3*s.* *net.*

—— **Sex. Aurelii Propertii Carmina.** The Elegies of Propertius, with English Notes. By the late F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. Second Edition. 8vo, cloth, 5*s.*

—— **Sex. Propertii Elegiarum Libri IV.** Recensuit A. PALMER. 3*s.* 6*d.*

SOPHOCLES. The Oedipus Tyrannus of Sophocles. By B. H. KENNEDY, D.D. Crown 8vo, 8*s.*

THEOCRITUS. Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by R. J. CHOLMELEY, M.A., City of London School. Crown 8vo. [*In the Press.*

THUCYDIDES. The History of the Peloponnesian War. With Notes and a Collation of the MSS. By the late R. SHILLETO, M.A. Book I. 8vo, 6*s.* 6*d.* Book II. 5*s.* 6*d.*

CORPUS POETARUM LATINORUM, a se aliisque denuo recognitorum et brevi lectionum varietate instructorum, edidit JOHANNES PERCIVAL POSTGATE, Litt.D. Tom. I quo continentur Ennius, Lucretius, Catullus, Horatius, Vergilius, Tibullus, Propertius, Ovidius. Large post 4to, 21*s.* net. Or in Two Parts, sewed, 9*s.* each *net.*

—— Part III, containing Gratius, Manilius, Phaedrus, Aetna, Persius, Lucanus, and Valerius Flaccus. 9*s.* net.

*** To be completed in Two Volumes.

CORPUS POETARUM LATINORUM. Edited by WALKER. 1 thick vol. 8vo. Cloth, 18*s.*

Containing:—Catullus, Lucretius, Virgilius, Tibullus, Propertius, Ovidius, Horatius, Phaedrus, Lucanus, Persius, Juvenalis, Martialis, Sulpicia, Statius, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Calpurnius, Siculus, Ausonius, and Claudianus.

Latin and Greek Class Books.

BAIRD. Greek Verbs. A Catalogue of Verbs, Irregular and Defective; their leading formations, tenses in use, and dialectic inflexions, with a copious Appendix, containing Paradigms for conjugation, Rules for formation of tenses, &c., &c. By J. S. BAIRD, T.C.D. *2s. 6d.*

— **Homeric Dialect**; its leading Forms and Peculiarities. New Edition, revised, by the Rev. W. GUNION RUTHERFORD, M.A., LL.D., Head Master of Westminster School. *1s.*

BAKER. Latin Prose for London Students. By ARTHUR BAKER, M.A. Wide fcap. 8vo, *2s.*

BARRY. Notes on Greek Accents. By the Right Rev. A. BARRY, D.D. New Edition, rewritten. *1s.*

BECKWITH. Satura Grammatica. A Collection of Latin Critical Notes and Hints for Army Students. By E. G. A. BECKWITH, B.A., Trinity College, Stratford-on-Avon. Fcap. 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

CHURCH. Latin Prose Lessons. By A. J. CHURCH, M.A., Professor of Latin at University College, London. Ninth Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

CLAPIN. Latin Primer. By the Rev. A. C. CLAPIN, M.A. Fourth Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *1s.*

COLERIDGE. Res Romanae, being brief Aids to the History, Geography, Literature and Antiquities of Ancient Rome for less advanced students. By E. P. COLERIDGE, B.A. With 3 Maps. Crown 8vo. Second Edition. *2s. 6d.*

— **Res Graecae,** being Aids to the study of the History, Geography, Archaeology, and Literature of Ancient Athens. With 5 Maps, 7 Plans, and 17 other Illustrations. Crown 8vo. *5s.*

COLLINS. Latin Exercises and Grammar Papers. By T. COLLINS, M.A. Seventh Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

— **Unseen Papers in Latin Prose and Verse.** Seventh Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *2s. 6d.*

— **Unseen Papers in Greek Prose and Verse.** Fifth Edition. Fcap. 8vo, *3s.*

— **Easy Translations from Nepos, Caesar, Cicero, Livy, &c.** For Retranslation into Latin. With Notes. *2s.*

COMPTON. Rudiments of Attic Construction and Idiom. By the Rev. W. COOKWORTHY COMPTON, M.A., Head Master of Dover College. Crown 8vo. *3s.*

Latin and Greek Class Books (*continued*).

FROST. Eclogae Latinae; or, First Latin Reading Book. With Notes and Vocabulary by the late Rev. P. FROST, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo, 1*s*. 6*d*.

—— **Analecta Graeca Minora.** With Notes and Dictionary. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo, 2*s*.

—— **Materials for Latin Prose Composition.** By the late Rev. P. FROST, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo, 2*s*. Key, 4*s*. *net*.

—— **A Latin Verse Book.** New Edition. Fcap. 8vo, 2*s*. Key, 5*s*. *net*.

HOLDEN. Foliorum Silvula. Part I. Passages for Translation into Latin Elegiac and Heroic Verse. By H. A. HOLDEN, LL.D. Twelfth Edition. Post 8vo, 7*s*. 6*d*.

—— **Foliorum Silvula.** Part II. Select Passages for Translation into Latin Lyric and Comic Iambic Verse. Third Edition. Post 8vo, 5*s*.

—— **Foliorum Centuriae.** Select Passages for Translation into Latin and Greek Prose. Tenth Edition. Post 8vo, 8*s*.

JEBB, JACKSON, and CURREY. Extracts for Translation into Greek, Latin, and English. By R. C. JEBB, M.P., Litt.D., LL.D., Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge; H. JACKSON, Litt.D., Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge; and W. E. CURREY, M.A., late Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. 2*s*. 6*d*.

MASON. Analytical Latin Exercises. By C. P. MASON, B.A. Fourth Edition. Part I, 1*s*. 6*d*. Part II, 2*s*. 6*d*.

—— **The Analysis of Sentences applied to Latin.** Post 8vo, 1*s*. 6*d*.

NETTLESHIP. Passages for Translation into Latin Prose. By H. NETTLESHIP, M.A., late Corpus Professor of Latin in the University of Oxford. Crown 8vo, 3*s*.

A KEY. Crown 8vo, 4*s*. 6*d*. *net*.

NOTABILIA QUAEDAM: or the Principal Tenses of most of the Irregular Greek Verbs, and Elementary Greek, Latin, and French Constructions. New Edition. 1*s*.

PALEY. Greek Particles and their Combinations according to Attic usage. A short Treatise. By F. A. PALEY, M.A., LL.D. 2*s*. 6*d*.

PENROSE. Latin Elegiac Verse, Easy Exercises in. By the Rev. J. PENROSE. New Edition. 12mo, 2*s*. Key, 3*s*. 6*d*. *net*.

Latin and Greek Class Books (*continued*).

PRESTON. Greek Verse Composition. By G. PRESTON, M.A. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo, 4*s.* 6*d.*

SEAGER. Faciliora. An Elementary Latin Book on a New Principle. By the Rev. J. L. SEAGER, M.A. 2*s.* 6*d.*

THACKERAY. Anthologia Graeca. A Selection of Greek Poetry, with Notes. By F. ST. JOHN THACKERAY. Sixth Edition. 16mo, 4*s.* 6*d.*

—— **Anthologia Latina.** A Selection of Latin Poetry, from Naevius to Boëthius, with Notes. By the Rev. F. ST. JOHN THACKERAY. Eighth Edition. 16mo, 4*s.* 6*d.*

—— **Hints and Cautions on Attic Greek Prose Composition.** Crown 8vo, 3*s.* 6*d.*

Books of Reference.

TEUFFEL'S HISTORY OF ROMAN LITERATURE. Fifth Edition, revised by Dr. SCHWABE, translated by Prof. G. C. W. WARR, M.A., King's College, London. Medium 8vo. Vol. I (The Republican Period), 15*s.* Vol. II (The Imperial Period), 15*s.*

DONALDSON'S THEATRE OF THE GREEKS. Tenth Edition. 5*s.*

KEIGHTLEY'S (T.) MYTHOLOGY OF ANCIENT GREECE AND ITALY. Fourth Edition, revised by L. SCHMITZ, Ph.D., LL.D. With Twelve Plates. 5*s.*

WEBSTER'S INTERNATIONAL DICTIONARY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE. Medium 4to, 2,118 pp., 3,500 Illustrations. Prices: cloth, £1 11*s.* 6*d.*; half-calf, £2 2*s.*; half-russia, £2 5*s.*; calf, £2 8*s.*; also in two vols., cloth, £1 14*s.*

In addition to the Dictionary of Words, with their pronunciation, etymology, alternative spellings, and various meanings, illustrated by quotations and numerous woodcuts, there are several valuable appendices, comprising a Pronouncing Gazetteer of the World; Vocabularies of Scripture, Greek, Latin, and English Proper Names; a Dictionary of the noted Names of Fiction; a Brief History of the English Language; a Dictionary of Foreign Quotations, Words, Phrases, Proverbs, &c.; a Biographical Dictionary with 10,000 Names, &c.

Prospectuses, with Specimen Pages, on application.

OXFORD: HORACE HART, PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY